unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Peter

Version 80

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2024-04-24
Version: 80
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2024-04-24
Version: 80
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2024-04-24
Version: 80
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2022-10-11
Version: 2.1.30
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2023-09-26
Version: 0.34
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2024-04-24
Version: 80
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2024-04-24
Version: 80
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links
Date: 2024-04-24
Version: 80
Published by: unfoldingWord

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Peter

Introduction to 2 Peter

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the book of 2 Peter

Introduction (1:1–2)
Reminder to live godly lives because God has enabled us to do so (1:3–15)
Reminder of the veracity of apostolic teaching (1:16–21)
Prediction of false teachers (2:1–3)
Examples of divine judgment (2:4–10a)
Description and denunciation of false teachers (2:10b–22)
Reminder that Jesus will return at the right time (3:1–13)
Concluding exhortation to live godly lives (3:14–17)

Who wrote the book of 2 Peter?

The author identified himself as Simon Peter. Simon Peter was an apostle. He also wrote the book of 1 Peter. Peter probably wrote this letter while in a prison in Rome, just before he died. Peter called this letter his second letter, so we can date it after 1 Peter. He addressed the letter to the same audience as his first letter. The audience probably was Christians scattered throughout Asia Minor.

What is the book of 2 Peter about?

Peter wrote this letter to encourage believers to live good lives. He warned them about false teachers who were saying Jesus was taking too long to return. He told them that Jesus was not slow in returning. Instead, God was giving people time to repent so that they would be saved.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "2 Peter" or "Second Peter." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "The Second Letter from Peter" or "The Second Letter Peter Wrote." (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Who were the people Peter spoke against?

It is possible that the people Peter spoke against were those who would become known as Gnostics. These teachers distorted the teachings of Scripture for their own gain. They lived in immoral ways and taught others to do the same.

What does it mean that God inspired Scripture?

The doctrine of Scripture is a very important one. 2 Peter helps readers to understand that while each writer of Scripture had his own distinct way of writing, God is the true author of Scripture (1:20-21).

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Singular and plural "you"

In this book, the word "I" refers to Peter. Also, the word "you" is always plural and refers to Peter's audience. (See: [[rc:///*ta/man/translate/figs-exclusive]] and [[rc:///*ta/man/translate/figs-you]])

What are the major issues in the text of the book of 2 Peter?

For the following verses, there are differences between some of the ancient manuscripts. The ULT text follows the reading that most scholars consider to be original and puts the other reading in a footnote. If a translation of the Bible exists in the language of wider communication in the region, translators may want to consider using the reading found in that version. If not, translators are advised to follow the reading in the ULT. * "to be kept in chains of lower darkness until the judgment" (2:4). Some ancient manuscripts have, "to be kept in pits of lower darkness until the judgment." * "They enjoy their deceitful actions while they are feasting with you" (2:13). Some manuscripts have, "They enjoy their actions while they are feasting with you in love feasts." * "Bosor" (2:15). A few other manuscripts read, "Beor." * "The elements will be burned with fire, and the earth and the deeds in it will be revealed" (3:10). Other manuscripts have, "The elements will be burned with fire, and the earth and the deeds in it will be burned up."

(See: **Textual Variants (p.206)**)

2 Peter 1

2 Peter 1 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

Introduction (1:1–2)
Reminder to live good lives, because God has enabled us to do so (1:3–15)
Reminder of the veracity of apostolic teaching (1:16–21)

Peter begins this letter in 1:1–2 by giving his name, identifying the people to whom he is writing, and offering a greeting. That was the way people typically began letters at this time.

Special Concepts in this Chapter

Knowledge of God

Having experiential knowledge of God means to belong to him or to have a relationship with him. Here, "knowledge" is more than just mentally knowing about God. It is the knowledge of personal relationship in which God saves a person and gives him grace and peace. (See: **know, knew, knowledge, unknown, distinguish (p. 216)**)

Living godly lives

Peter teaches that God has given believers all that they need for living godly lives. Therefore, believers should do everything they can to obey God more and more. If believers continue to do this, then they will be effective and productive through their relationship with Jesus. However, if believers do not continue living godly lives, then it is as though they have forgotten what God did through Christ to save them. (See: [[rc:///*tw/dict/bible/kt/godly]] and [[rc:///*tw/dict/bible/kt/save]])

Other Possible Translation Difficulties in this Chapter

The truth of Scripture

Peter teaches that the prophecies in Scripture were not made up by men. The Holy Spirit revealed God's message to the men who spoke them or wrote them down. Also, Peter and the other apostles did not make up the stories they told people about Jesus. They witnessed what Jesus did and heard God call Jesus his son.

2 Peter 1:1

Simon Peter

In this culture, letter writers would give their own names first, and they would refer to themselves in the third person. If that would be confusing in your language, you could use the first person. If your language has a particular way of introducing the author of a letter, you could also use that. Alternate translation: "I, Simon Peter, am writing this letter" or "From Simon Peter" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.145)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.145)**)

Simon Peter

Simon Peter is the name of a man, a disciple of Jesus. See the information about him in Part 1 of the Introduction to 2 Peter. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**)

a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ

This phrase gives further information about Simon Peter. He describes himself as being both a **servant of Jesus Christ** and one given the position and authority of being Christ's **apostle**. (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**) (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**)

the ones having received

In this culture, after giving their own names, letter writers would then say to whom they were writing, naming those people in the third person. If that would be confusing in your language, you could use the second person. Alternate translation: "to you who have received" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.145)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.145)**)

to the ones having received a faith equal in value with us

That these people have **received a faith** implies that God has given that faith to them. Alternate translation: "to those to whom God has given a faith equal in value with us" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

to the ones having received a faith equal in value

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **faith** with a verb, such as "trust" or "believe." Alternate translation: "to those whom God has made to trust" or "to those whom God has made to believe" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

with us

Here, the word **us** refers to Peter and the other apostles, but not to those to whom he is writing. Alternate translation: "as we apostles have received" (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**)

by the righteousness

The word **by** indicates the means through which they received the faith. Alternate translation: "by means of the righteousness"

the righteousness of our God and Savior

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **righteousness** by translating the idea behind it with an adjective such as "righteous" or "right." Alternate translation: "the righteous acts of our God and Savior" or "the right way of our God and Savior" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:2

May grace and peace be multiplied to you

In this culture, letter writers would offer a good wish for the recipient before introducing the main business of the letter. Use a form in your language that makes it clear that this is a greeting and blessing. Alternate translation: "May God increase his kind acts to you and make you more peaceful" (See: **Blessings (p.111)**) (See: **Blessings (p. 111)**)

May grace and peace be multiplied

God is the one who will give **grace** and **peace** to believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make that information explicit. Alternate translation: "May God increase his grace and peace" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

May grace and peace be multiplied to you

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **grace** and **peace** by stating the ideas behind them with equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: "May God multiply his kind acts to you and give you a more peaceful spirit" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

May grace and peace be multiplied

Peter speaks of **grace and peace** as if they were objects that could increase in size or number. If this is confusing in your language, you can use a different metaphor that means that these things will increase, or use plain language. Alternate translation: "May God increase his grace and peace" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

to you

Here the pronoun **you** is plural, since Peter is writing to believers in Jesus as a group. Generally, throughout the letter the pronouns "you" and "your" are plural for this same reason. (See: **Forms of You (p.147)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.147)**)

in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord

If you would not use an abstract noun here, you could translate **knowledge** using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "because you know God and Jesus our Lord" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 100)**)

in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord

This could mean: (1) "because of knowing God and Jesus our Lord" or (2) "through knowing God and Jesus our Lord."

our Lord

Here, **our Lord** means "the person who is lord over us" or "the person who rules over us." (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

2 Peter 1:3

As his divine power has given to us

Here, **as** indicates that this verse provides the reason for the expected result, which is Peter's command in 1:5–7. Alternate translation: "Since his divine power has given to us" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

to us

Here, **us** refers to Peter and all believers. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**)

his divine power

The pronoun **his** could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: "God's divine power" (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jesus, by his power as God" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

his divine power

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **power** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "God, because he can do anything," (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

his divine power has given

Peter is speaking figuratively of God's **divine power** as if it were a living thing that could give something to people. God is the one who is giving, and he uses his **divine power** to do so. Alternate translation: "God has used his divine power to give" (See: **Personification (p.178)**) (See: **Personification (p.178)**)

for life and godliness

Here, the word **for** indicates the purpose for which God has given all these things to believers. Alternate translation: "for the purpose of life and godliness" (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**) (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**)

for life and godliness

Here, **godliness** describes the word **life**. Alternate translation: "for a godly life" (See: **Hendiadys (p.150)**) (See: **Hendiadys (p.150)**)

godliness

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **godliness** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "acting honorably toward God" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

through the knowledge

The word **through** here indicates the means by which God has given us all things for life and godliness. Alternate translation: "by means of the knowledge"

through the knowledge of the one having called us

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **knowledge** by translating it with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "through our knowing the one who called us" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

of the one having called us

This phrase could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: "of God, who called us" (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: "of Jesus, who called us"

us

Here, **us** refers to Peter and his audience, fellow believers. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**)

through his glory and excellence

Here, **through** indicates the means by which God called us. Alternate translation: "by means of his glory and excellence"

through his glory and excellence

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **glory** and **excellence** by stating the ideas behind them with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "because he is so great and so good" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:4

through which

Here, **through** indicates the means by which God gave his promises. Alternate translation: "by means of which"

through which

Here, **which** refers back to words from the previous verse. It could refer to: (1) "his glory and excellence." Alternate translation: "through his glory and excellence" (2) "all the things for life and godliness." Alternate translation: "by giving us all of these things" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

to us

Here, **us** refers to Peter and his audience, fellow believers. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**)

he has given

The pronoun **he** could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: "God has given" (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jesus has given" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

he has given to us the precious and great promises

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **promises** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "he has promised to us precious and great things" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

so that through them you might be sharers of the divine nature

This is a purpose clause. Peter is stating the purpose for which God has given to us precious and great promises. In your translation, follow the conventions of your language for purpose clauses. Alternate translation (without a comma preceding): "in order that through them you might be sharers of the divine nature" (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**) (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**)

through them

The word **through** here indicates the means by which you might be sharers of the divine nature. Alternate translation: "by means of them"

through them

Here the pronoun **them** refers back to the precious and great promises of the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "through these promises" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

of the divine nature

The abstract noun **nature** refers to the inherent features of something or what it is like. Alternate translation: "of what God is like" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

having escaped the corruption

Peter speaks figuratively of people not suffering from the **corruption** that wicked desires cause as if they had **escaped** from that corruption. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this phrase with a non-figurative expression. Alternate translation: "no longer being corrupted" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

in the world

Here, **the world** could mean: (1) the place where we all live, where we are surrounded by sinful people and temptations to sin. Alternate translation: "that is all around us" (2) the system of values that people share who do not honor God. Alternate translation: "of the world's ungodly value system" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

by lust

Here, **by** indicates the means by which the world became corrupt. It does not indicate the means by which Peter's addressees escaped corruption. Alternate translation: "by means of lust"

corruption

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **corruption** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "things that corrupt you" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:5

and now {for} this same {reason

The phrase **with respect to this very thing** refers to what Peter has just said in the previous verses. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this phrase explicitly. Alternate translation: "and now because of these things that God has done" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

applying all diligence

The phrase **applying all diligence** indicates the means by which one is to do the action of supplying that follows. Alternate translation: "by means of applying all diligence"

applying all diligence

Here, **applying all diligence** is an idiom that means doing one's best or making the best effort. Alternate translation: "making every effort" (See: **Idiom (p.161)**) (See: **Idiom (p.161)**)

supply in your faith

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **faith** with a verb such as "trust" or "believe." Alternate translation: "as you trust in Jesus, add" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

your

The pronoun **your** is plural here, since Peter is writing to believers in Jesus as a group. Generally, throughout the letter the pronouns "you" and "your" are plural for this same reason. (See: **Forms of You (p.147)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.147)**)

goodness; & goodness

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **goodness** with an adjective phrase in both occurrences in this verse. Alternate translation: "doing what is good ... doing what is good" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

and in goodness, knowledge

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "and supply in your goodness, knowledge" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

knowledge

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **knowledge** using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "knowing more about God" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:6

and in knowledge, self-control

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "and supply in knowledge, self-control" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

knowledge

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **knowledge** by translating it using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "knowing more about God" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

self-control; & self-control

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **self-control** with a verbal phrase in both occurrences in this verse. Alternate translation: "controlling yourself ... controlling yourself" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

and in self-control, endurance

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "and supply in self-control, endurance" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

endurance; & endurance

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **endurance** with a verbal phrase in both occurrences in this verse. Alternate translation: "enduring hardship ... enduring hardship" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

and in endurance, godliness

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "and supply in endurance, godliness" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

godliness

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **godliness** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "acting honorably toward God" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:7

and in godliness, brotherly affection

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "and supply in godliness, brotherly affection" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

brotherly affection; & brotherly affection

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **brotherly affection** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "being concerned for your brothers and sisters … being concerned for your brothers and sisters" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

and in brotherly affection, love

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "and supply in brotherly affection, love" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

love

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **love** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "loving others" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:8

For these things existing and increasing in you

The word **For** here indicates that Peter is giving a reason why his audience should obey the command given in 1:5–7. Alternate translation: "Because these things existing and increasing in you" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

For these things existing and increasing in you cause you to be neither barren nor unfruitful

Peter is describing a conditional situation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express it that way. Alternate translation: "For if these things are existing and increasing in you, then they will cause you to be neither barren nor unfruitful" (See: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.120)**) (See: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.120)**)

these things

Here, **these things** refers back to the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

cause you to be neither barren nor unfruitful

Peter speaks of a person who does not possess these qualities as if he were a field that will not produce a crop. If that is confusing in your language, you could use a different metaphor with that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "cause you to be neither unproductive nor useless" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

cause you to be neither barren nor unfruitful

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in positive terms. Alternate translation: "cause you to produce and bear fruit" (See: **Double Negatives (p.131)**) (See: **Double Negatives (p.131)**)

neither barren nor unfruitful

The words **barren** and **unfruitful** mean basically the same thing. In combination with the negatives **neither** and **nor**, they are used together to emphasize that this person will not be unproductive but will experience great benefits from knowing Jesus. If it is confusing in your language to use two words together that mean the same thing, you could just use one word with that meaning. Alternate translation: "not unproductive" (See: **Doublet (p. 134)**) (See: **Doublet (p.134)**)

in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **knowledge** using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "in your knowing our Lord Jesus Christ" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:9

For

For indicates that Peter is giving another reason why his audience should obey the command given in 1:5–7. Peter gave a positive reason in 1:8 and gives a negative reason here. Alternate translation: "Because" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

he in whom these things are not present is blind

Here, **he** does not refer to a specific person, but to any person who does not have these things. Alternate translation: "anyone who does not have these things" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.148)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.148)**)

these things

The phrase **these things** refers back to the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

he & is blind, nearsighted

In this metaphor, Peter speaks of a person who does not possess these qualities as if the person were **blind** or **nearsighted**. He means this in a spiritual sense, that this person cannot see what is spiritually important. If that is confusing in your language, you could use a different metaphor with that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "is like a blind or shortsighted person who cannot see their importance" (See: **Metaphor (p. 165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

he & is blind, nearsighted

Although the words **blind** and **nearsighted** have similar meanings, **blind** is more extreme than **nearsighted,** and a person cannot be both at the same time. If it is confusing in your language to describe someone using both of these words in this way, you could use a word like "or" between them or show how they might work together. Alternate translation: "he … is blind or nearsighted" or "he … is blindly nearsighted" or "he … is so nearsighted that he is blind to what is spiritually important" (See: **Hendiadys (p.150)**) (See: **Hendiadys (p.150)**)

having received forgetfulness of the cleansing

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **forgetfulness** in this phrase with a verb. Alternate translation: "having forgotten the cleansing" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

of the cleansing of his past sins

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **cleansing** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "that God has cleansed him from his old sins" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

of the cleansing of his past sins

Peter is speaking figuratively of forgiving sin as if sin were something that made people dirty and thus required **cleansing** from God. Alternate translation: "the forgiving of his past sins" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

2 Peter 1:10

Therefore

Peter uses **Therefore** to introduce a description of what his readers should do as a result of what he has just said. He is referring specifically to the two reasons for obedience given in 1:8–9. Alternate translation: "Because of these reasons" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

brothers

Peter is using the term **brothers** figuratively as a way to directly address his fellow believers in Jesus. See the UST. (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

brothers

Peter is using the term **brothers** in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Be sure that this is clear in your translation so that your readers do not get the impression that Peter is addressing only men. If you use a non-figurative word such as "believers" to translate the metaphor **brothers**, you may need to use both the masculine and the feminine forms of that word in your language. If you retain the metaphor, you could state "my brothers and sisters." (See: **When Masculine Words Include Women (p.213)**) (See: **When Masculine Words Include Women (p.213)**)

to make your calling and election sure

The words **calling** and **election** share similar meanings and both refer to God choosing believers to belong to him. Peter uses them together to emphasize this idea. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use just one word and provide the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "make sure that God has really chosen you to belong to him" (See: **Doublet (p.134)**) (See: **Doublet (p.134)**)

for doing these things

Here, **these things** refers back to the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7. (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

for doing these things, you will certainly not ever stumble

Peter is describing a conditional situation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express it that way. Alternate translation: "For if you do these things, then you will certainly not ever stumble" (See: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.120)**) (See: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.120)**)

you will certainly not ever stumble

The combination of words here expresses strong emphatic negation. Alternate translation: "you will most certainly never stumble"

you will certainly not ever stumble

Here, **stumble** could mean: (1) abandoning faith in Christ. Alternate translation: "you will certainly not abandon faith in Christ" (2) committing sin. Alternate translation: "you will certainly not practice sinful behavior" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

2 Peter 1:11

For

For indicates that Peter is giving a reason why his readers should want to obey the commands given in 1:5–7 and 1:10. (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

in this way

Here, **in this way** refers back to the way of living that includes the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

will be richly provided to you the entrance into the eternal kingdom

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: "God will richly provide to you the entrance into the eternal kingdom" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **kingdom** with a verbal phrase, such as "where our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ rules." Alternate translation: "into the eternal place where our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ rules" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:12

Therefore

Connecting Statement:

Peter uses **Therefore** to introduce the purpose of his letter. In order to encourage his readers to do everything he has said in 1:5–10, and especially because of the promise in 1:11, he wants to keep reminding them about these things. Use a natural form in your language to show that this introduces a result or purpose for saying what came before. Alternate translation: "Because these things are very important" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

these things

Here, **these things** refers back to what Peter has stated in the previous verses, specifically to faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7. (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

have been established in

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: "you learned well" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

have been established in the present truth

Here, **established** is used figuratively to refer to one being firmly committed to something. Alternate translation: "you strongly believe the truth that you now have" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

in the present truth

Here, **in** has the meaning of "in reference to" or "with regard to." Alternate translation: "in reference to the present truth"

in the present truth

Here, **present** is used figuratively as if **truth** were an object that could be there with Peter's audience. Here it does not refer to present time. Alternate translation: "in the truth that you have" or "in the truth that is with you" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

in the present truth

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **truth** with an adjective, such as "true." Alternate translation: "in these true teachings" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:13

But

But could mean: (1) Peter is contrasting what he just said in the previous verse with what he is about to say. His audience already knows the truth, but he wants to remind them again. Alternate translation, as in the UST: "Nevertheless." (2) Peter is connecting this statement with what he said at the beginning of the previous verse. Peter is always ready to remind them of the truth, and he thinks it is correct to do so. Alternate translation: "And" (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**) (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**)

as long as I am in this tent

Peter speaks of his body as if it were a **tent** that he is wearing and will take off. Being in his body represents being alive. If it would be helpful in your language, you could indicate this directly. Alternate translation: "as long as I am in this body" or "as long as I live" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

to arouse you in remembrance

Peter uses **arouse** figuratively to refer to causing his readers to think about these things. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this usage by translating this with a non-figurative expression. Alternate translation: "to remind you of these things so that you will think about them" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

to arouse you in remembrance

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **remembrance** in this phrase with the verb "remind." Alternate translation: "to remind you" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:14

knowing

In this clause Peter is giving a reason why he will always remind his audience of doctrinal truths in this letter, specifically faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7. Alternate translation: "This is because I know" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

the putting off of my tent is imminent

Peter speaks of his body as if it were a **tent** that he is wearing and will take off. Being in his body represents being alive, and taking it off represents dying. Alternate translation: "I will soon take off this body" (See: **Metaphor (p. 165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

the putting off of my tent is imminent

Putting off his **tent** is a nice way to refer to dying. If it would be helpful in your language,, you could indicate this directly. Alternate translation: "I will die soon" (See: **Euphemism (p.139)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.139)**)

just as also our Lord Jesus Christ revealed this to me

Suggested footnote: "Peter may be referring here to what Jesus told him, as recorded in John 21:18–19."

2 Peter 1:15

Likewise

Likewise here could mean that: (1) this statement is in addition to what Peter just said in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "Moreover" (2) this statement is contrasting what he just said in the previous verse with what he is about to say. Alternate translation: "But" (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**) (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**)

to cause you to always have the remembrance of these things

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **remembrance** in this phrase with the verb "remind." Alternate translation: "to remind you of these things" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

of these things

Here, **these things** refers to what Peter has said in the previous verses, specifically the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7. (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

after my departure

Peter uses the word **departure** as a nice way to speak of his death. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a more common euphemism in your language, or state it directly. Alternate translation: "after my passing" or "after I die" (See: **Euphemism (p.139)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.139)**)

2 Peter 1:16

For

Connecting Statement:

For indicates that in 1:16–21 Peter explains to the believers why they should remember "these things," which were mentioned in 1:5–7. Alternate translation: "This is because" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p. 122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

we did & make known

Here, **we** refers to Peter and the other apostles. It does not refer to his readers. Alternate translation: "we apostles did not follow" (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**)

the power and coming

The words **power** and **coming** work together to refer to the same thing; they may be translated as a single phrase. Alternate translation: "the powerful coming" (See: **Hendiadys (p.150)**) (See: **Hendiadys (p.150)**)

the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ

In this clause Peter refers to the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth. This future event was foreshadowed by the powerful appearance of Jesus known as the "transfiguration," which is described in Matthew 17:1–8, Mark 9:1–8, and Luke 9:28–36. Peter was an eyewitness of that event.

of our Lord Jesus Christ

Here, **our** refers to all believers. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p. 143)**)

by} having become eyewitnesses

This phrase indicates the means by which the apostles had made known to others the second coming of Jesus. The apostles based their teaching about the return of Jesus partly on their eyewitness experience. Alternate translation: "by means of becoming eyewitnesses"

of the majesty of that one

The pronoun **that one** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "of the majesty of Jesus" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

of the majesty of that one

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **majesty** with an adjective such as "majestic." Alternate translation: "of his majestic nature" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:17

For

Here, **For** indicates that what follows in 1:17–18 is the reason that Peter can say in the previous verse that he was an eyewitness to the majesty of Jesus. Use a connector that indicates that this is a reason or explanation. Alternate translation: "I say this because" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

from God the Father

Father is an important title for God. (See: **Translating Son and Father (p.211)**) (See: **Translating Son and Father (p.211)**)

he has received honor and glory from God the Father

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **honor** and **glory** by translating them with equivalent expressions that use verbs. Alternate translation: "and God the Father honored and glorified him" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

such a voice having been brought to him by the Majestic Glory

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "when he heard that voice come to him from the Majestic Glory" or "when he heard the voice of the Majestic Glory speak to him" or "when the Majestic Glory spoke to him" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

such a voice having been brought to him by the Majestic Glory

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotations in your language. Alternate translation: "such a voice having been brought to him by the Majestic Glory, and this is what God said" (See: **Quotations and Quote Margins (p. 190)**) (See: **Quotations and Quote Margins (p.190)**)

having been brought to him

The pronoun **him** refers to Jesus. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state explicitly the idea behind this connection. Alternate translation: "having been brought to Jesus" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p. 185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

the Majestic Glory

Peter refers to God in terms of his **Glory**. The glory of God is closely associated with God himself and here substitutes for his name. Alternate translation: "God, the Supreme Glory" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

my Son

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: **Translating Son and Father (p.211)**) (See: **Translating Son and Father (p.211)**)

my & my & myself

The pronouns **my** and **myself** refer to God the Father, who is the one speaking in the quotation. (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

2 Peter 1:18

we ourselves heard this voice, having been brought from heaven

With the words **we ourselves**, Peter is referring to himself and to the disciples James and John, who also heard the voice of God. Alternate translation: "we, James, John, and I, heard this voice that came from heaven" (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**)

having been brought from heaven

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: "having come from heaven" or "that came from heaven" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p. 102)**)

being with him

This is a temporal phrase that can begin with "when." Alternate translation: "when we were with him"

with him

Here, **him** refers to Jesus, not God the Father. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this reference explicitly. Alternate translation: "being with Jesus" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

the holy mountain

The **mountain** Peter refers to is the mountain on which Jesus was powerfully transformed in the event known as the "transfiguration." If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this information explicitly. Alternate translation: "on the holy mountain on which Jesus was powerfully transformed" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

2 Peter 1:19

we have the very certain prophetic word

The word translated as **very certain** could refer to: (1) something that is extremely reliable. In this case, Peter is saying in 1:18–19 that we have two reliable witnesses to Jesus' glory: God's own voice speaking on the mountain of transfiguration and the extremely reliable prophetic scriptures. Alternate translation: "We also have the most reliable prophetic word" (2) something that is confirmed by something else. In this case, Peter is saying that God's voice on the mountain confirms, or makes even more trustworthy, the prophetic scripture that we already trusted completely. Alternate translation: "we have the prophetic word confirmed"

we have

Here, **we** refers to all believers, including Peter and his readers. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.143)**)

the very certain prophetic word

Peter uses the phrase **prophetic word** to refer figuratively to the entire Old Testament. It does not refer only to those Old Testament books called "the Prophets," nor only to the predictive prophecies within the Old Testament. Alternate translation: "the Scriptures, which the prophets spoke" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

to which you do well to pay attention

Here the relative pronoun **which** refers to the prophetic word mentioned in the previous phrase. Peter instructs the believers to pay close attention to the prophetic message, which is the Old Testament. (See: **Pronouns (p.183)**) (See: **Pronouns (p.183)**)

to which you do well to pay attention

Peter uses the statement **you do well** to tell his audience that they should pay attention to the Old Testament Scriptures. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this phrase by translating this phrase as a suggestion or command. Alternate translation: "to which you should pay attention" (See: **Statements — Other Uses (p.202)**) (See: **Statements — Other Uses (p.202)**)

as to a lamp shining in a dark place

Peter compares the prophetic word to a **lamp** that gives light in the darkness. Just as a lamp gives light in order for someone to see in **a dark place**, so the prophetic word gives believers guidance for how to live properly in this sin-filled world. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this simile in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "a guide for you to know how to live in this world" (See: **Simile (p.199)**) (See: **Simile (p.199)**)

until the day might dawn

Peter speaks figuratively of Christ's second coming by calling it the new **day** that comes in the morning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "until the day Christ returns" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

the morning star might rise in your hearts

Peter speaks figuratively of Christ as the **morning star**, which is a star that indicates daybreak and the end of the night. Christ will **rise** by bringing light into the hearts of believers, ending all doubt and bringing full understanding of who he is. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor in a non-figurative way or change the metaphor to a simile. Alternate translation: "Christ brings full understanding to you like the morning star shines its light into the world" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

in your hearts

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for people's minds. Alternate translation: "in your minds" or "to help you understand" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

the morning star

The **morning star** refers to the planet Venus, which is sometimes visible in the sky just before the sun rises, thus indicating that daybreak is near. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make this information more explicit. Alternate translation: "the star that appears just before the sun rises" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

2 Peter 1:20

knowing this first

Peter uses **first** here to refer to the degree of importance. It does not to refer to order in time. Alternate translation: "Most importantly, you must understand"

knowing this first

Peter is using a statement to give an instruction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could indicate this by translating it as a command. If you do so, it might be helpful to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Above all, know this" (See: **Statements — Other Uses (p.202)**) (See: **Statements — Other Uses (p.202)**)

every prophecy of scripture does not come from one's own interpretation

Here, **one's own interpretation** could mean: (1) that the Old Testament prophets did not base any of their prophecies on their own interpretations of what God had said, but only prophesied what God revealed to them. If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of information. Alternate translation: "no prophet interpreted his prophecy according to his own interpretation" (2) that no individual person can interpret scripture on his or her own, but only with the help of the Holy Spirit and the larger community of believers. Alternate translation: "no one is able to explain any prophecy in the Bible through his own ability" (See: **Information Structure (p.163)**) (See: **Information Structure (p.163)**)

from one's own interpretation

The word **interpretation** is an abstract noun that represents an action. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this with a verb. Alternate translation: "no prophet interpreted his prophecy according to what he himself thought" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 1:21

For

For indicates that what follows is the reason that the statement of the previous verse is true. It could mean: (1) the prophets could not prophesy according to their own interpretations, because true prophecy could only come from the Holy Spirit. (2) no one can interpret prophecy without help from the Holy Spirit, because the prophecy came from the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "The reason for this is that" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

no prophecy was ever brought by the will of man

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: "no prophet ever prophesied by the will of man" or "the will of man never produced any prophecy" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

no prophecy was ever brought by the will of man

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **will** with a verbal phrase, such as "what a man desires." Alternate translation: "no prophecy was ever made according to what a man desires" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

by the will of man

Peter is using the term **man** in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: "by human desire" (See: **When Masculine Words Include Women (p.213)**) (See: **When Masculine Words Include Women (p.213)**)

men being carried along by the Holy Spirit spoke from God

Peter speaks figuratively of the **Holy Spirit** helping the prophets to write what God wanted them to write as if the Holy Spirit **carried** them from one place to another. Alternate translation: "men spoke from God by the Holy Spirit directing them" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

men & spoke from God

In this phrase, Peter is leaving out a word that it would need in many languages in order to be complete. If this word is required in your language, it can be supplied from earlier in the verse. Alternate translation: "men spoke prophecy from God" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

2 Peter 2

2 Peter 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Prediction of false teachers (2:1–3)
Examples of divine judgment (2:4–10a)
Description and denunciation of false teachers (2:10b–22)

Peter continues this letter in 2:1–3 by predicting that false teachers will try to deceive the believers, just as false prophets did during the time true prophets were writing the Old Testament. Then in 2:4–10a Peter describes examples of God punishing those who acted similarly to the coming false teachers. Peter then closes this section in 2:10b–22 by describing the wicked character and deeds of these false teachers.

Special concepts in this chapter

Flesh

"Flesh" is a metaphor for a person's sinful nature. It is not the physical part of man that is sinful. "Flesh" represents the human nature that rejects all things godly and desires what is sinful. This is the condition of all humans before they receive the Holy Spirit by believing in Jesus. (See: [[rc://*/tw/dict/bible/kt/flesh]])

Implicit information

There are several analogies in 2:4–8 that are difficult to understand if the Old Testament has not yet been translated. Further explanation may be necessary. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

2 Peter 2:1

Now

The term translated **Now** could refer to: (1) a new topic expressed by **Now** in the ULT. (2) a contrast between the false prophets in this clause and the true Old Testament prophets mentioned in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "But" (See: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.113)**) (See: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p. 113)**)

among the people

Here, **the people** refers specifically to the Israelites. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate this explicitly. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" or "the Israelites" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

heresies of destruction

Here, **heresies** refers to opinions that are contrary to the teaching of Christ and the apostles. Alternate translation: "opinions of destruction" (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.208)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.208)**)

heresies of destruction

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **destruction** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "destructive heresies" or "heresies that destroy" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

heresies of destruction

Peter is using the possessive form to describe an opinion that is characterized by **destruction**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the adjective "destructive" instead of the noun "destruction." Alternate translation: "destructive heresies" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

heresies of destruction

Here, **destruction** could refer to: (1) the eternal damnation of those who teach or accept these **heresies**. Alternate translation: "heresies that result in their eternal damnation" (2) the destruction of the faith of those who teach or accept these **heresies**. Alternate translation: "heresies that destroy their faith in the Messiah"

the master who bought them

Here, **master** refers to Jesus. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "master Jesus who bought them" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

the master who bought them

Peter uses the phrase **master who bought** to speak figuratively of Jesus as the owner of the people he has saved from damnation by paying the penalty for their sins with his death. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "Jesus who saved them" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

bringing swift destruction on themselves

Here, **bringing** indicates that this clause is the result of the deeds of the false teachers described in the previous clauses. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make a new sentence here and state this connection plainly. Alternate translation: "As a result, they are bringing swift destruction on themselves." (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

swift destruction

Here,**swift** could mean: (1) their destruction will come soon. Alternate translation: "destruction that will happen soon" or "imminent destruction" (2) their destruction will be sudden or quick. Alternate translation: "quick destruction"

bringing swift destruction on themselves

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **destruction** with a verb, such as "destroy." Alternate translation: "they are causing themselves to be destroyed soon" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 2:2

many

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate explicitly, as the UST does, that this refers to people. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

will follow

Here Peter uses the word **follow** figuratively to refer to someone imitating the actions of someone else, like someone who walks behind another person in the same direction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: "will imitate their licentious acts" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

their licentious acts

Here the pronoun **their** refers to the false teachers introduced in the previous verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "the licentious acts of these false teachers" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

licentious acts

Here, **licentious acts** refers to immoral sexual actions that demonstrate a lack of self-control. Alternate translation: "uncontrolled sensual acts"

because of whom

Here, **whom** refers to the false teachers. It does not refer to the licentious acts in the previous clause. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate explicitly, as the UST does, that this refers to the false teachers. Alternate translation: "through these false teachers" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

the way of truth

Peter uses the phrase **the way of truth** here figuratively to refer to the Christian faith or how a Christian person lives his or her life. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: "the true Christian manner of living" or "the true Christian faith" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

the way of truth

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **the way** that is characterized by **truth**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the adjective "true" instead of the noun "truth." Alternate translation: "the true way" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

the way of truth will be slandered

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and say who will do the action. Alternate translation: "unbelievers will slander the way of truth" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

the way of truth will be slandered

Peter speaks figuratively of **the way of truth** as if it were a person who could be **slandered** or shown disrespect. Alternate translation: "they will say bad things about the way of truth" (See: **Personification (p.178)**) (See: **Personification (p.178)**)

the way of truth will be slandered

Peter assumes that his audience will know that unbelievers will be the ones who slander the Christian faith when they see the sensual lives of the false teachers and their followers. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate this explicitly. Alternate translation: "the way of truth will be slandered by unbelievers" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

2 Peter 2:3

in greed

Here, **in** indicates the reason for what the false teachers do. Alternate translation: "because of greed"

in greed

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **greed** by translating the idea behind it with an adjective, such as "greedy." Alternate translation: "because they are greedy" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

with false words

Here, **false words** are the means by which the false teachers will exploit their victims. Alternate translation: "by means of false words"

with false words

Peter is using the term **words** to describe the teachings of the false teachers that were conveyed by using **words**. Alternate translation: "by false teachings" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

they will exploit

Here, **they** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: "these false teachers will exploit you" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p. 185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle

Here, **whom** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: "condemnation from long ago is not idle for these false teachers" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle

Here, **for whom** indicates that the condemnation is directed again the false teachers. Alternate translation: "against whom condemnation from long ago is not idle"

for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not sleep

These two long phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the false teachers will certainly be condemned. If it would be helpful in your language, you could combine them. Alternate translation: "their destruction from long ago is certain" (See: **Parallelism (p.175)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.175)**)

for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not sleep

You can translate these phrases with verbs in positive terms. Alternate translation: "their condemnation from long ago is active, and their destruction is awake" (See: **Double Negatives (p.131)**) (See: **Double Negatives (p.131)**)

condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not sleep

Peter speaks of **condemnation** and **destruction** figuratively as if they are people who can be **idle** or **sleep**. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express the meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "condemnation from long ago is not ineffective, and their destruction is not delayed" (See: **Personification (p.178)**) (See: **Personification (p.178)**)

for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not sleep

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns "condemnation" and "destruction" by stating the ideas behind them with verbal forms. Alternate translation: "they are not idly condemned from long ago, and they will not be destroyed too late" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 2:4

For

For indicates here that Peter is giving the reason for the result he implicitly described in the previous verse. He is saying why the destruction of the false teachers is certain. Alternate translation: "This is because" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

if

Connecting Statement:

Here, **if** indicates the beginning of a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you can translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: "Since God did not spare the angels who had sinned" (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**) (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**)

did not spare

Here, **spare** means "to refrain from punishing." Alternate translation: "did not refrain from punishing"

angels who had sinned

Peter uses **who had sinned** to distinguish the angels who were punished by God from those that were not. (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**) (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**)

in chains of darkness

Some of the best ancient manuscripts read "pits" instead of "chains." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it has. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading in the ULT. (See: **Textual Variants (p.206)**) (See: **Textual Variants (p.206)**)

in chains of darkness

This phrase could refer to: (1) chains in a very dark place. Alternate translation: "in chains in darkness" (2) a very deep darkness that imprisons them like chains. Alternate translation: "bound in darkness like chains" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

throwing down to Tartarus

The word **Tartarus** is a term from Ancient Greek religion that refers to the place where evil spirits and wicked men who have died are punished. Some Ancient Jewish literature written in Greek uses **Tartarus** as a term for the place where God punishes the wicked. Alternate translation: "he cast them into hell" (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 153)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**)

he handed over

God is the one who **handed over** the angels who had sinned. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "God handed over" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

he handed over

Here, Peter speaks figuratively of God imprisoning the angels who sinned like someone who has **handed over** a criminal to the prison guards for imprisonment. Alternate translation: "imprisoned" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

for judgment

This phrase gives the purpose or goal for which the sinning angels are being held in captivity. Alternate translation: "for the purpose of judgment" (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**) (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**)

for judgment

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **judgment** by translating it with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "to be judged" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

those being kept for judgment

This phrase refers to the sinful angels mentioned earlier in the verse. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "those sinful angels who are being kept for judgment" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

those being kept for judgment

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active verbal form and you can indicate who is doing the action. Alternate translation: "those whom God is keeping for judgment" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

2 Peter 2:5

and

Here, **and** indicates the beginning of the second condition in a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you can translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: "Since" (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**) (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**)

he did not spare the ancient world

Here, **world** refers to the people who lived in it. Alternate translation: "he did not spare the people who lived in the ancient times" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

he did not spare

As in 2:4, the word **spare** here means "to refrain from punishing." Alternate translation: "did not refrain from punishing"

he did not spare

Here, **he** refers to God. If it would be helpful for your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "God did not spare" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

the eighth, Noah

Here, **eighth** is an idiom used to refer to a group of eight people. It means that Noah was one of only eight people in the ancient world whom God did not destroy. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the literal meaning of the idiom. Alternate translation: "eight people, including Noah" or "with seven others, Noah" (See: **Idiom (p.161)**) (See: **Idiom (p.161)**)

Noah

Noah is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**)

Noah, a preacher of righteousness

This phrase gives us more information about Noah. It tells us that Noah proclaimed **righteousness** to the ungodly people of the ancient world. It does not distinguish this Noah from any other person named Noah. (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**) (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**)

a preacher of righteousness

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **righteousness** with an equivalent expression. In this context, the term refers righteous deeds. Alternate translation: "a preacher of righteous deeds" or "a preacher of how to act rightly" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

a preacher of righteousness

Peter could be using the possessive form to refer to: (1) a preacher who is characterized by righteousness. Alternate translation: "a preacher who is righteous" (2) a preacher who tells others to live righteously. Alternate translation: "one who urged others to live righteously" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

having brought a flood upon the world of the ungodly ones

This clause indicates when God protected Noah and his other seven family members, when he brought a flood upon the world, as it is translated in the UST.

upon the world of the ungodly ones

Peter could be using the possessive form to refer to: (1) the human content of the ancient world. Alternate translation: "the world that contained ungodly people" (2) the world as being characterized by ungodliness. Alternate translation: "the ungodly world" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

2 Peter 2:6

and

Here, **and** indicates the beginning of the third condition in a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you can translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: "Since" (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**) (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**)

and the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, having reduced to ashes, he condemned to destruction

If it would be natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases. Alternate translation: "and he condemned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to destruction, having reduced them to ashes" (See: **Information Structure (p.163)**) (See: **Information Structure (p.163)**)

the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, having reduced to ashes

This phrase indicates the means by which God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah. Alternate translation: "by means of reducing the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes"

of Sodom and Gomorrah

Sodom and Gomorrah are the names of two cities. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**)

he condemned to destruction

Here, **he** refers to God. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could state that explicitly. Alternate translation: "God condemned them to destruction" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

he condemned to destruction

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **destruction** by translating the idea behind it with an verb, such as "destroy." Alternate translation: "he condemned them to be destroyed" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

having set an example {of the things that} are going to happen to the ungodly ones

This clause indicates the result of what happened in the previous clauses of the verse. God's destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah resulted in them being an **example** and a warning of what happens to others who disobey God. Alternate translation: "with the result that God set them as an example of the things that will happen to the ungodly" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

to the ungodly ones

Here, **ungodly** refers to wicked people in general, not to one specific wicked person. Alternate translation: "to an ungodly person" or "to ungodly people" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.148)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.148)**)

2 Peter 2:7

and

Connecting Statement:

Here, **and** indicates the beginning of the fourth condition in a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you can translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: "since" (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**) (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**)

he rescued

Here, **he** refers to God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation, as in the UST: "God rescued" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

Lot

Connecting Statement:

Lot is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**)

being oppressed by the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness

Connecting Statement:

This clause is giving more information about **Lot**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could begin a new sentence here to clarify this. Alternate translation: "He was being oppressed by the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness" (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**) (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**)

being oppressed by the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: "the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness oppressed him" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

by the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness

Here, **by** could refer to: (1) the thing that was oppressing Lot, as in the ULT. (2) the reason why Lot was oppressed. Alternate translation: "because of the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

by the behavior of the lawless ones

If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the abstract noun **behavior** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "by what the lawless ones did" or "by how the lawless ones acted" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

behavior & in licentiousness

Here, **in** indicates the content of what the lawless people were doing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate **in licentiousness** with an adjective. Alternate translation: "the licentious behavior"

the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness

If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the abstract noun **licentiousness** with an adjective. See how you translated the plural form of this term in 2:2. Alternate translation: "the licentious behavior of the lawless ones" or "the wild sensual behavior of the lawless ones"(See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 100)**)

of the lawless ones

Here, **the lawless ones** refers to the people who lived in the city of Sodom, where Lot lived. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this phrase explicitly. Alternate translation: "of the lawless people of Sodom" or "of the people who act as if there is no law in Sodom" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

2 Peter 2:8

for

Peter uses **for** here to provide background information about Lot's life in Sodom. This is to help readers understand why Peter called Lot a righteous person in the previous verse. Peter is not using **for** here to indicate result. Use the natural form in your language for introducing background information. Alternate translation: "now" (See: **Background Information (p.108)**) (See: **Background Information (p.108)**)

for, by seeing and by hearing

If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the abstract nouns **seeing** and **hearing** with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "for by what he saw and what he heard" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

that righteous {man

This refers to Lot. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this phrase explicitly. Alternate translation: "righteous Lot" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

living among them

This clause indicates the time when Lot dwelled in Sodom. Alternate translation: "when he lived among them"

them

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to the inhabitants of Sodom. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could specify what the pronoun **them** refers to. Alternate translation: "the people of Sodom" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

living among them day from day

This phrase, **day from day**, is an idiom meaning "day after day" or "every day." You may need to express this literally in your language. Alternate translation: "living among them day after day" or "living among them every day" (See: **Idiom (p.161)**) (See: **Idiom (p.161)**)

was tormenting his righteous soul

Here, **soul** refers to Lot's thoughts and emotions. The immoral behavior of the citizens of Sodom and Gomorrah disturbed him emotionally. Alternate translation: "was greatly disturbed" (See: **Synecdoche (p.204)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.204)**)

by lawless works

This phrase could mean: (1) the lawless works were the means by which Lot tormented his soul. Alternate translation: "with lawless works" (2) the lawless works were the reason why Lot tormented his soul. Alternate translation: "because of lawless works"

2 Peter 2:9

the Lord knows how

This verse and the next verse are the end of a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is giving the result of the previous conditions being true. If you have made 2:4–10 into separate sentences, then you will need to indicate that 2:9 is the result of the previous conditions being true. Alternate translation: "Therefore, it is true that the Lord knows how" or "Since these things are true, it is also true that the Lord knows how" (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**) (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**)

and to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished in the day of judgment

Here, **but** could refer to: (1) a contrast between the previous clause and what follows, as in the ULT and UST. (2) a simple connection between the previous clause and what follows. Alternate translation: "and to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished in the day of judgment" (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**) (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**)

a trial, and to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished in the day of judgment

In this clause, Peter is leaving out some words that it would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the previous clause. Alternate translation: "a trial and the Lord knows how to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished in the day of judgment" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

to be punished

This is a purpose clause. Peter is stating the purpose for which God is keeping the unrighteous people. Alternate translation (without a comma preceding): "in order to be punished" (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**) (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**)

to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: "to keep the unrighteous ones to punish them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

in the day of judgment

Here, **in** could refer to: (1) when the unrighteous ones will be punished. Alternate translation: "on the day of judgment" (2) the point in time up to which the unrighteous ones will be punished. Alternate translation: "until the day of judgment"

the day of judgment

Peter is using the possessive form to describe a **day** that is characterized by **judgment**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a phrase to explain it. Alternate translation: "the day when God judges mankind" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

2 Peter 2:10

but

Connecting Statement:

Here, **but** indicates a connection between the last clause of the previous verse and what follows. It does not indicate a contrast between "the unrighteous" in the previous verse and "those going after the flesh" in this verse. Alternate translation: "and especially those going after the flesh" (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**) (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**)

the ones going after

Connecting Statement:

Peter uses the phrase **going after** figuratively to refer to habitually doing something. This expression is frequently used in the Bible to describe people worshiping false gods or engaging in sexual immorality. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this plainly. Alternate translation: "those habitually engaging in" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

the flesh

Here, **flesh** is used figuratively to refer to person's sinful nature. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this figure of speech literally. Alternate translation: "their sinful nature" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

in {its} lusts of defilement

Here, **in** indicates that this phrase shows the means by which the wicked people go after the flesh. Alternate translation: "by means of practicing its lusts of defilement"

in {its} lusts of defilement

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **defilement** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "in its lusts that defile" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 100)**)

and despising authority

Here, **and** indicates that this clause provides an additional characteristic of those mentioned in the previous clause. It does not indicate a second group of wicked people. These wicked people not only pursue their sinful desires, but also despise authority. Alternate translation: "and who also despise authority" (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**) (See: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.124)**)

despising authority

Here, **authority** could refer to: (1) God's authority, as suggested from the examples of rebelling against God in the previous verses. Alternate translation: "despising God's authority" (2) angelic authority, as suggested by the insulting of "glorious ones" mentioned in the remainder of the verse. Alternate translation: "despising the authority of angels"

Audacious ones

Audacious ones marks the beginning of the second section of this chapter, which continues until the end of 2:22. In this section Peter describes the wicked character and deeds of the false teachers.

Audacious ones! Self-willed ones

The words **Audacious ones** and **Self-willed ones** are exclamations that emphasize the bold pride of the false teachers. Alternate translation: "They are so audacious and self-willed!" or "How audacious and self-willed they are!" (See: **Exclamations (p.141)**) (See: **Exclamations (p.141)**)

Self-willed ones

Self-willed means "doing whatever one wants to do." Alternate translation: "Those who do whatever they want"

They do not tremble

Here, **they** refers to the false teachers Peter introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "These false teachers do not tremble" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

while insulting glorious ones

This clause indicates the time when the false teachers do not tremble. Alternate translation: "when insulting glorious ones"

glorious ones

Here, **glorious ones** could refer to: (1) spiritual beings, such as angels, demons, or both. Alternate translation: "glorious spiritual beings" (2) important human beings, such as church leaders. Alternate translation: "glorious people"

2 Peter 2:11

being greater in strength and power

This clause could refer to: (1) a contrast between the description of the **angels** in this clause with their behavior in the next clause. Alternate translation: "despite being greater in strength and power" (2) a description of the **angels**. Alternate translation: "who are greater in strength and power" (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**) (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**)

being greater in strength and power

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the surrounding context, which is a description of the false teachers. Alternate translation: "being greater in strength and power than these false teachers" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p. 136)**)

being greater in strength and power

The words **strength** and **power** mean similar things. Peter is using them together for emphasis. Together, the words describe extreme power. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this pair of words with a single expression. Alternate translation: "being much more powerful" (See: **Doublet (p.134)**) (See: **Doublet (p.134)**)

do not bring an insulting judgment against them

Here, **them** could mean: (1) the "glorious ones." Alternate translation: "do not bring an insulting judgment against these glorious ones." (2) the false teachers. Alternate translation: "do not bring an insulting judgment against these false teachers." (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

2 Peter 2:12

these {men

Here, **these** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. Alternate translation: "these false teachers" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

these {men}, as unreasoning animals

Peter describes the false teachers by comparing them to **unreasoning animals**. Just as **animals** cannot think rationally, neither can these people. Alternate translation: "these false teachers are like animals who are not capable of thinking rationally" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

having by nature been born for capture and destruction

This clause gives more information about the unreasoning animals and thus, by way of comparison, the false teachers. Alternate translation: "which have by nature been born for capture and destruction" (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**) (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.128)**)

having by nature been born for capture and destruction

Here, **by nature** means that the unreasoning animals (and false teachers by comparison) were destined for capture and destruction due to their very nature as animals born for this purpose. Alternate translation: "according to their nature, these animals are born for capture and destruction"

for capture and destruction

This is a purpose clause. The word **for** here indicates that what follows it is the purpose for which these animals have been born. Alternate translation: "for the purpose of capture and destruction" (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**) (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**)

for capture and destruction

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **capture** and **destruction** by stating the ideas behind them with verbs. Alternate translation: "in order to capture and destroy them" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

slandering about {those things} in which they are ignorant

This clause could refer to: (1) more information about the false teachers. Alternate translation: "who slander those things in which they are ignorant" (2) the reason the false teachers will be destroyed. Alternate translation: "because they slander those things in which they are ignorant"

about {those things} in which they are ignorant

Here, **those things** could refer to: (1) the "glorious ones" of 2:10. Alternate translation: "who slander those of whom they are ignorant" (2) the Christian teachings that these false teachers are rejecting. Alternate translation: "who slander the teachings of which they are ignorant"

they will also be destroyed in their destruction

Here, the pronouns **they** and **their** refer to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "these false teachers will also be destroyed in their destruction" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

they will also be destroyed

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who will do the action. Alternate translation: "God will also destroy them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

they will also be destroyed

Here, **also** is used for emphasis and may be translated as "indeed" or "surely." Alternate translation: "they will indeed be destroyed" or "they will surely be destroyed"

in their destruction

This clause indicates the time when the false teachers will be destroyed. Alternate translation: "at the time of their destruction"

in their destruction

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **destruction** with a verb, such as "destroy." Alternate translation: "when they are destroyed" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 2:13

being harmed {as} wages of unrighteousness

Peter speaks of the punishment that the false teachers will receive figuratively as if it were a wage they had earned. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this in a non-figurative manner. Alternate translation: "receiving the punishment they deserve for their unrighteousness" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p. 165)**)

of unrighteousness

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **unrighteousness** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "of the wrong things they have done" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

pleasure

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **pleasure** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "something that pleases" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

the reveling in the day

Here, **reveling** refers to immoral activity that includes gluttony, drunkenness, and sexual activity. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this abstract noun by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "their ability to revel in the day" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

the reveling in the day

This phrase indicates the time when the false teachers were **reveling**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate **in** as "during." Doing these things "during the day" indicates that these people are not ashamed of this behavior. Alternate translation: "reveling during the day"

stains and blemishes

Peter speaks of the false teachers as if they were **stains** or **blemishes** on a garment that cause shame for those who wear it. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating it as a simile. Alternate translation: "like stains and blemishes on clothes, which cause disgrace" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

stains and blemishes

The words **stains** and **blemishes** share similar meanings. Peter is using them together for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate them with a single expression. Alternate translation: "unsightly stains" (See: **Doublet (p.134)**) (See: **Doublet (p.134)**)

stains and blemishes

For emphasis, here Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the context. Alternate translation: "They are stains and blemishes" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

reveling in their deceptions

If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the abstract noun **deceptions** with an adjective like "deceptive." Alternate translation: "reveling in their deceptive deeds" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 2:14

having eyes full of an adulteress

Here, **eyes** refers figuratively to a person's desires, and **eyes full** means that a person constantly desires one thing. Alternate translation: "constantly desiring an adulteress" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

having eyes full of an adulteress

This clause could mean: (1) the false teachers constantly desired to have immoral sexual relations with any woman they saw, thereby viewing every women as a potential adulteress. Alternate translation: "constantly desiring women with whom to commit adultery" (2) the false teachers were constantly looking for immoral women with whom to have immoral sexual relations. Alternate translation: "constantly seeking sexually immoral women"

enticing unstable souls

This clause refers to the actions of the false teachers Peter introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "these false teachers entice unstable souls" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

enticing unstable souls

Here, **souls** refers to persons. Alternate translation: "enticing unstable people" (See: **Synecdoche (p.204)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.204)**)

having hearts trained in covetousness

This clause refers to the actions of the false teachers Peter introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "they have hearts trained in covetousness" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

having hearts trained in covetousness

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: "they trained their hearts to be covetous" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

having hearts trained in covetousness

Peter is using **hearts** figuratively to refer to whole persons, including their thoughts, desires, and emotions. The term can thus be translated here with the reflexive pronoun "themselves." Alternate translation: "having trained themselves to covet" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

having hearts trained in covetousness

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **covetousness** with a verb. Alternate translation: "having training their hearts to covet" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

children of cursing

Peter is using a Hebrew idiom in which a person is said to be a "child" of the thing that characterizes that person. Here **children of cursing** refers to people who are cursed by God. He is not speaking of people who curse others. Alternate translation: "accursed people" (See: **Idiom (p.161)**) (See: **Idiom (p.161)**)

children of cursing

These words are an exclamation that emphasizes the wickedness of the false teachers. Alternate translation: "They are such cursed children!" or "What cursed children they are!" (See: **Exclamations (p.141)**) (See: **Exclamations (p. 141)**)

2 Peter 2:15

Abandoning the straight way

Peter uses the metaphor **Abandoning the straight way** to give an image of walkers leaving a certain pathway. He speaks figuratively of the false teachers refusing to live their lives in obedience to the Lord as if they had stopped walking on the Lord's path. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "refusing to live in obedience to God" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

the straight way

Here, **the straight way** refers to the way of living life that is right and pleasing to the Lord. Peter may also be using it here to refer specifically to the Christian faith, similar to his use of "the way of truth" in 2:2. Alternate translation: "the right way of the Lord" (See: **Idiom (p.161)**) (See: **Idiom (p.161)**)

they have gone astray

Here, Peter continues the path metaphor from the previous clause. He figuratively describes the wicked lifestyles of the false teachers as if they had been **led astray** from the straight path. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this in a non-figurative manner. Alternate translation: "they have been behaving wickedly" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

they have gone astray

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: "they went astray" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

having followed the way of Balaam of Bosor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness

In this verse, Peter compares the false teachers to **Balaam**. Peter assumes that his readers will know that he is referring to a story recorded in the Old Testament book of Numbers. In that story, Balaam was hired by wicked kings to curse the Israelites. When God did not allow Balaam to do so, he used wicked women to seduce the Israelites into sexual immorality and idol worship so that God would punish them for their disobedience. Balaam did these wicked things because he wanted to be paid by the wicked kings, but he was eventually killed by the Israelites when they conquered the land of Canaan. You could indicate this explicitly if it would be helpful to your readers, particularly if they would not know the story. Alternate translation, as a statement: "following the way of Balaam son of Bosor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness so much that he led the Israelites into immorality and idolatry in order to receive money" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

having followed the way of Balaam of Bosor

Here, Peter uses the word **followed** figuratively to refer to someone imitating the actions of someone else, like someone who walks behind another person in the same direction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: "having imitated the way of Balaam son of Bosor" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

of Balaam of Bosor

Balaam and **Bosor** are the names of two men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.153)**)

the way of Balaam of Bosor

Here, Peter uses **the way of Balaam** figuratively to refer to how Balaam lived his life. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: "the manner of living of Balaam son of Bosor" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

who loved the wages of unrighteousness

Here, the pronoun**who** refers to Balaam. It does not refer to Bosor, nor to the false teachers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this directly. If you begin a new sentence, you will have to replace the comma with a period. Alternate translation: "Balaam loved the wages of unrighteousness" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

who loved the wages of unrighteousness

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **wages** that are characterized by **unrighteousness**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a phrase to explain it. Alternate translation: "who loved the unrighteous wages" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

the wages of unrighteousness

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **unrighteousness** with the adjective "unrighteous." Alternate translation: "the unrighteous wages" or "the wages for unrighteous acts" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 2:16

he had a rebuke

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **rebuke** as a verb and you could state who did the action. Alternate translation: "God rebuked him" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

he had a rebuke

If it would be helpful in your language, you could specify who rebuked Balaam. This clause could mean: (1) the donkey rebuked Balaam. Alternate translation: "a donkey rebuked him" (2) God rebuked Balaam through the donkey. Alternate translation: "God rebuked him" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

for his own transgression

This **transgression** specifically refers to Balaam's use of wicked women to lead the Israelites into sexual immorality and idolatry. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "for his wicked act of leading the Israelites into immorality" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

the irrationality of the prophet

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **irrationality** with an adjective like "irrational" or "foolish." Alternate translation: "the irrational action of the prophet" or "the foolish action of the prophet" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

restrained the irrationality of the prophet

Here, **the prophet** refers to Balaam. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "restrained the madness of the prophet Balaam" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

2 Peter 2:17

These {men

These men refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "These false teachers" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

These {men} are waterless springs

Peter speaks figuratively of the false teachers to describe their uselessness. People expect **springs** to provide water to quench thirst, but **waterless springs** leave thirsty people disappointed. In the same way, false teachers, although they promise many things, are unable to do what they promise. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this in a non-figurative way or turn the metaphor into a simile. Alternate translation: "These men are disappointing, like springs without water" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

mists driven by a storm

Peter gives a second figurative description of the uselessness of the false teachers. When people see storm clouds, they expect rain to fall. When the winds from the **storm** blow the clouds away before the rain can fall, the people are disappointed. In the same way, false teachers, although they promise many things, are unable to do what they promise. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this in a non-figurative way, or turn the metaphor into a simile. Alternate translation: "they never give what they promise" or "they are disappointing like rain clouds that the storm drives away" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

These {men} are waterless springs and mists driven by a storm

These two metaphors mean similar things. Peter is using them together for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this connection by translating them with a single expression. Alternate translation: "These are men who surely never give what they promise" or "These are men who surely disappoint" (See: **Doublet (p.134)**) (See: **Doublet (p.134)**)

for whom the gloom of darkness has been reserved

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: "for whom God has reserved the gloom of darkness" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

the gloom of darkness

This could mean: (1) the **gloom** is characterized by **darkness**. Alternate translation: "the dark gloom" (2) the **gloom** is identical to the **darkness**. Alternate translation: "the gloom, which is darkness."

the gloom of darkness

Here, Peter uses **gloom** and **darkness** figuratively to refer to hell. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this directly. Alternate translation: "for whom God has reserved the gloom of darkness of hell" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

2 Peter 2:18

For

Here, **For** indicates the reason why the false teachers are reserved for punishment in the gloom of darkness, as mentioned in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "This is so because" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

speaking arrogant things of vanity

This clause indicates the means by which the false teachers entice others to sin. Alternate translation: "by means of speaking arrogant things of vanity"

arrogant things of vanity

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **arrogant** speech that is characterized by **vanity**. Alternate translation: "vain, arrogant things" or "vain and arrogant things" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

of vanity

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **vanity** with an adjective, such as "vain." (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

they entice by lusts of the flesh

Here, the pronoun **they** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "these false teachers entice by the lusts of the flesh" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

by lusts of the flesh

Here, **flesh** is used figuratively to refer to a person's sinful nature. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the literal meaning for the metaphor. Alternate translation: "by the lusts of their sinful natures" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

by licentious acts

Here, **licentious acts** refers to immoral sexual actions that demonstrate a lack of self-control. See how you translated this term in 2:2. Alternate translation: "uncontrolled sensual acts"

the ones barely escaping from the ones living in error

Here, Peter speaks figuratively of people who recently became believers as **those barely escaping** from sinful humanity. He also refers to unbelievers who still live according to their sinful desires as **those living in error**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor in a non-figurative manner. Alternate translation: "people who recently ceased living sinfully as other people do" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

2 Peter 2:19

promising freedom to them

This clause refers to another means by which the false teachers enticed their followers, continuing from the previous verse. Alternate translation: "They also entice them by promising freedom to them"

promising freedom to them

Here, **freedom** is a metaphor for the ability to live exactly as one wants. Alternate translation: "promising to give them the ability to live exactly as they want to live" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

promising freedom to them

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to those people who are deceived by the false teachers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "promising freedom to those whom they deceive" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

while themselves being slaves of destruction

Peter uses the word **themselves** here to emphasize the irony of spiritually enslaved people promising spiritual freedom to others. Alternate translation: "while they themselves are slaves of destruction" (See: **Reflexive Pronouns (p.192)**) (See: **Reflexive Pronouns (p.192)**)

slaves

Peter speaks figuratively of people who live sinfully as if they were **slaves** to sin who need to escape from their captivity. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor as a simile. Alternate translation: "like slaves" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

slaves of destruction

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **slaves** that are characterized by **destruction**. Alternate translation: "slaves that will be destroyed" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

For by what someone has been overcome, by this he has been enslaved

Peter speaks of a person as being **enslaved** when anything has control over that person, he speaks of that thing as the master of that person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this non-figuratively or as a simile. Alternate translation: "For if a person is overpowered by something, that person becomes controlled by that thing" or "For if a person is overpowered by something, that person becomes like a slave to that thing" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

For by what someone has been overcome, by this he has been enslaved

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this passive sentence with an active form. Alternate translation: "For if something overpowers a person, that thing enslaves that person" (See: **Active or Passive (p. 102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

2 Peter 2:20

For

Here, **For** could refer to: (1) another explanation of Peter's statement "themselves being slaves of destruction" in the previous verse, (2) a transition from what Peter said in the previous verse to what he is going to say in this verse. Here, **For** does not indicate the reason or result of what was said in the previous verse. Alternate translation, as in the UST: "And"

if, having escaped the defilements of the world through the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, but, having been entangled again, they have been overcome by these things, for them the last things have become worse than the first things

Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you can translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: "they have escaped the impurities of the world through the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, but having become entangled and overcome by them again, the last has become worse for them than the first" (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**) (See: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.115)**)

if, having escaped the defilements of the world

Using a similar metaphor to that in 2:18, here Peter speaks figuratively of believers as if they had been slaves to the **defilements** of the world and have **escaped** that captivity. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor in a non-figurative manner. Alternate translation: "if they have ceased living in the defiling manner of the world" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

the defilements of the world

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **defilements** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "the things that sinful human society does to defile itself" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

the defilements of the world

Here, the **world** refers to human society, which has been corrupted by sin. Alternate translation: "the defiling practices of sinful human society" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

through the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **knowledge** with a verbal phrase. See how you translated similar phrases in 1:2. Alternate translation: "by knowing our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

of our Lord and Savior

Here, **our Lord** means "the person who is lord over us" or "the person who rules over us." The conjunction **and** indicates that **our** also applies to **Savior**, meaning "the person who saves us." Alternate translation: "of the person who rules over us and saves us" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

having been entangled again, they have been overcome by these things

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can supply the doer of the action from earlier in the verse. Alternate translation: "these things having entangled them again; these things have overcome them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

having been entangled again

Here, Peter speaks figuratively of people who seem to have been believers but have returned to living sinfully as if they have become **entangled** in a net. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor in a non-figurative manner. Alternate translation: "if they have begun to live sinfully again" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

by these things

Here, the pronoun **these things** refers to "the defilements of the world." If it would be helpful to your readers, you could specify this in your translation. Alternate translation: "by these defilements of the world" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

for them

Connecting Statement:

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1 and discussed in 2:12–19. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "these false teachers" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

for them the last things have become worse than the first things

Here, the adjectives **last** and **first** function as nouns. They are plural, and ULT supplies the noun **things** in each case to show that. If your language does not use adjectives in this way, you can supply a more specific singular noun. Alternate translation: "the final condition for them is worse than their original condition" (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.173)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.173)**)

2 Peter 2:21

For

Here, **For** indicates the reason why the last condition of the false teachers was worse than their first condition, as mentioned in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "This is so because" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

for them

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "for these false teachers" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

the way of righteousness

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **the way** that is characterized by **righteousness**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a phrase to explain it. Alternate translation: "the righteous way" (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

the way of righteousness

Peter speaks figuratively of life as a **way** or path. This phrase refers to the way of living life that is right and pleasing to the Lord. Peter may also be using it here to refer specifically to the Christian faith, similar to his use of "the way of truth" in 2:2 and "the straight way" in 2:15. Alternate translation: "the manner of living that pleases the Lord" (See: **Idiom (p.161)**) (See: **Idiom (p.161)**)

having known {it

This clause indicates that the next clause describes an event that happened after the event of this clause. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "after having known it"

to turn away from the holy commandment

Here, **to turn away from** is a metaphor that means to stop doing something. Alternate translation: "to stop obeying the holy commandment" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

τῆς & ἁγίας ἐντολῆς

Peter uses **the holy commandment** to speak of the commands of God in general. He is not referring to one specific **commandment**. These commands were **delivered** by the apostles to the believers. Alternate translation: "the holy commands" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.148)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.148)**)

τῆς & ἁγίας ἐντολῆς

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the ideas behind the abstract noun **commandment** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "what God commanded" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

the holy commandment that has been delivered to them

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: "the holy commandment that the apostles delivered to them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

2 Peter 2:22

This of the true proverb has happened to them

Here, **This** refers to the **proverb** Peter states later in this verse. It does not refer back to a statement from the previous verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different expression. Alternate translation: "What this true proverb says has happened to them" or "This true proverb describes what happened to them" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

to them

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "to these false teachers" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

A dog returns to its own vomit, and a washed pig to the rolling of mud

Peter uses two proverbs to illustrate what the false teachers have done. These proverbs make a figurative comparison: Just as a dog returns to eat its own vomit and a washed pig rolls in the mud again, so these false teachers, who once stopped living a sinful life, have now gone back to living sinfully. Although they knew "the way of righteousness," they went back to doing the things that defile them morally and spiritually. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the meaning by translating these proverbs as similes. Alternate translation: "They are like dogs that eat their own vomit or like clean pigs that go back to rolling in the mud." (See: **Proverbs (p. 188)**) (See: **Proverbs (p.188)**)

A dog

A **dog** is an animal that is considered to be unclean and disgusting by Jews and many cultures of the Ancient Near East. Therefore, calling someone a **dog** was an insult. If dogs are unfamiliar to your culture and you have a different animal that is considered unclean and disgusting or whose name is used as an insult, you could use the name of this animal instead. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.208)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.208)**)

a & pig

A **pig** is an animal that is considered to be unclean and disgusting by Jews and many cultures of the Ancient Near East. Therefore, calling someone a **pig** was an insult. If pigs are unfamiliar to your culture and you have a different animal that is considered unclean and disgusting or whose name is used as an insult, you could use the name of this animal instead. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.208)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.208)**)

2 Peter 3

2 Peter 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Reminder that Jesus will return at the right time (3:1–13)
Concluding exhortation to live godly lives (3:14–17)

Special concepts in this chapter

Fire

People often use fire to destroy things or to make something pure by burning off the dirt and worthless parts. Therefore, when God punishes the wicked or purifies his people, that action is often associated with fire. (See: [[rc://*/tw/dict/bible/other/fire]])

Day of the Lord

The exact time of the coming day of the Lord will come as a surprise to people. This is what the simile "like a thief in the night" means. Because of this, Christians are to be prepared at all times for the coming of the Lord. (See: [[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/dayofthelord]] and [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile]])

2 Peter 3:1

Beloved ones

Beloved ones refers here to those to whom Peter is writing, which can be extended to all believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this term explicitly. Alternate translation: "Beloved fellow believers" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

in which

Here, **which** refers to both this letter and the previous letter that Peter had written to this group of believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could start a new sentence to say this explicitly. Alternate translation: "In both of these letters" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p. 185)**)

I arouse your pure mind in remembrance

Here, Peter uses **arouse** figuratively, as if the minds of his readers are asleep, to refer to causing his readers to think about these things. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this with a non-figurative expression. See how you translated this term in 1:13. Alternate translation: "to remind your sincere mind of these things so that you will think about them" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p. 165)**)

in remembrance

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **remembrance** in this phrase with a verb. See how you translated this term in 1:13. Alternate translation: "to remember" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

your pure mind

Although the word **pure** usually refers to something being uncontaminated or not mixed with something else, Peter uses it figuratively here to indicate that his readers have minds which have not been deceived by the false teachers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "your undeceived minds" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

2 Peter 3:2

to remember

Here, Peter is stating a purpose for which he is writing this letter. Alternate translation (without a comma preceding): "that you should remember" (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**) (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**)

the words spoken previously by the holy prophets

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the words that the holy prophets spoke previously" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

the words spoken previously

Peter is using **words** here to describe the prophecies of the Old Testament prophets that were conveyed by using words, especially those prophecies about the future return of Christ. Alternate translation: "the prophecies spoken previously" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

by the holy prophets

Here, **prophets** refers to the Old Testament prophets whom Peter also referred to in 1:19–21. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "by the holy Old Testament prophets" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

the command of the Lord and Savior through your apostles

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the command of our Lord and Savior, which your apostles gave to you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

the command of the Lord and Savior

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **command** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "what our Lord and Savior commanded" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

the command of the Lord and Savior

Peter uses **command** here to speak of the commands of Jesus in general. He is not referring to one specific command. These commands were delivered by the apostles to the believers. Alternate translation: "the commands of the Lord and Savior" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.148)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.148)**)

of the Lord

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **Lord** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "the person who rules" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

Savior

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **Savior** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "the person who saves" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

through your apostles

This phrase indicates the means by which **the command of the Lord and Savior** was given to Peter's readers. Alternate translation: "by means of your apostles"

through your apostles

Here, **your apostles** could refer to: (1) the apostles who proclaimed the teachings of Christ to Peter's readers or ministered to them in some way. Alternate translation: "the apostles who serve you" (2) all apostles, who belong to all Christians. Alternate translation: "the apostles of us all" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

2 Peter 3:3

knowing this first

Peter uses **first** here to refer to the degree of importance. It does not to refer to order in time. See how you translated this in 1:20. Alternate translation: "Most importantly, you must understand"

knowing this first

Peter is using a statement to give an instruction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could indicate this by translating it as a command. If you do so, it might be helpful to start a new sentence here. See how you translated this in 1:20. Alternate translation: "Above all, know this" (See: **Statements — Other Uses (p.202)**) (See: **Statements — Other Uses (p.202)**)

mockers will come with mockery

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **mockery** with a verb. Alternate translation: "mockers will come and mock" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

going according to their own lusts

Here, Peter uses **going** figuratively to refer to habitually doing something, like someone who walks toward something. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: "those habitually living according to their own lusts" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

going according to their own lusts

Here, **lusts** refers to sinful desires that are opposed to God's will. Alternate translation: "living according to their own sinful desires" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

2 Peter 3:4

and saying

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotations in your language. Alternate translation: "and they will say" (See: **Quotations and Quote Margins (p.190)**) (See: **Quotations and Quote Margins (p.190)**)

Where is the promise of his coming

The mockers ask this rhetorical question to emphasize that they do not believe that Jesus will return. Alternate translation: "There is no promise of his coming!" or "The promise of his coming is not true!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.195)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.195)**)

Where is the promise of his coming

Here, **Where** is used idiomatically to ask what has happened to the promise. The mockers are not asking for the location of something. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this idiom by translating this in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "What happened to the promise of his coming?" or "What has come about regarding the promise of his coming?" (See: **Idiom (p.161)**) (See: **Idiom (p.161)**)

Where is the promise of his coming

Here, **promise** refers to the fulfillment of the promise that Jesus will return. Alternate translation: "Where is the fulfillment of the promise of his coming?" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

the promise of his coming

Here, the pronoun **his** refers to Jesus. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "the promise of Jesus' coming" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

of his coming

Here, **his coming** refers to the return of the Lord Jesus to earth. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "the return of Jesus to earth" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

For since the fathers fell asleep

Here, **the fathers** is used figuratively. It could refer to: (1) the Old Testament ancestors of the Israelites, often called "the patriarchs." Alternate translation: "For since Israel's patriarchs fell asleep" (2) those leaders of the first generation of Christians who had died by the time Peter wrote this letter. Alternate translation: "For since the first Christian leaders fell asleep" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

the fathers fell asleep

Here, **fell asleep** is a euphemism meaning they died. You could either use a similar euphemism for death in your language or say this in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "the fathers died" (See: **Euphemism (p.139)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.139)**)

all things continue in the same way from the beginning of creation

Here, **all things** is an exaggeration the mockers use to argue that nothing in the world has ever changed, so it cannot be true that Jesus will return. (See: **Hyperbole (p.157)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.157)**)

from the beginning of creation

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **creation** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "since God created the world" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 3:5

For this is hidden {from} them willingly

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "For they willingly hide this from themselves" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

willingly, that the heavens existed long ago

Peter is leaving out some of the words that this clause would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the end of the verse. Alternate translation: "that the heavens existed long ago by the word of God" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

the earth had been formed & by the word of God

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the word of God formed the earth" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

had been formed out of water and through water

This clause refers to God causing the land to come up **out of** and **through** the **water**, gathering the bodies of water together to make the land appear.

by the word of God

Here, **the word of God** refers to the God's specific commands by which the earth was created. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "by the commands of God" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

2 Peter 3:6

through which

Here, **which** refers both to God's word and water. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "through the word of God and water" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p. 185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

having been flooded by water

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and you can state who did the action. You may need to begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: "God flooded the world with water" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

the world at that time

Here, **at that time** refers to the time when the world existed before the flood. It does not refer to the exact time when the universe was created. Alternate translation: "the world that existed then"

having been flooded by water

This phrase indicates the means by which the ancient world was destroyed. Alternate translation: "by having been flooded by water"

2 Peter 3:7

But the present heavens and the earth

Here, **But** indicates that Peter is contrasting the past destruction of the ancient world he mentioned in the previous verse with the future destruction of the present world. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this contrast explicitly. Alternate translation: "In contrast, the present heavens and the earth" (See: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.113)**) (See: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.113)**)

the present heavens and the earth, by the same word, are having been reserved for fire

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and say who has done the action. Alternate translation: "God, by that same word, has reserved the present heavens and the earth for fire" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

by the same word

Here, **word** refers to "the word of God," which Peter said in 3:5–6 was the means by which the heavens and earth were created and a flood destroyed the world. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "by the same word of God" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

for fire

Here, **for** indicates the purpose for which God has been reserving the present heavens and earth. Alternate translation: "for the purpose of fire" (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**) (See: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.117)**)

for fire

Here, Peter uses **fire** to refer to what fire does, which is burn. Alternate translation: "for burning with fire" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**)

being kept for a day of judgment

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and say who is doing the action. It might also be helpful to begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: "God is keeping them for the day of judgment" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

for a day of judgment

Here, **for** could refer to: (1) the purpose for which God is keeping the present heavens and earth. Alternate translation: "for the purpose of the day of judgment" (2) the point in time up to which God is keeping the present heavens and earth. Alternate translation: "until the day of judgment"

a day of judgment and destruction of the ungodly men

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **judgment** and **destruction** by stating the ideas behind them with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "the day when God judges mankind and destroys the ungodly men" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

of the ungodly men

Although the term **men** is masculine, Peter is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: "of the ungodly people" (See: **When Masculine Words Include Women (p.213)**) (See: **When Masculine Words Include Women (p.213)**)

2 Peter 3:8

let this one thing not be hidden {from} you

Alternate translation: "do not fail to understand this one fact" or "do not ignore this one thing"

that one day with the Lord {is} like 1,000 years

Here, **with the Lord** means "in the judgment of the Lord." Alternate translation: "that from the Lord's point of view, one day is like a thousand years"

one day with the Lord {is} like 1,000 years, and 1,000 years {are} like one day

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize that God does not perceive of time the same way that humans do. What might seem to be a short or long time for people would not seem so for God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could combine these phrases. Alternate translation: "one day and 1,000 years are alike for the Lord" (See: **Doublet (p.134)**) (See: **Doublet (p.134)**)

2 Peter 3:9

The Lord does not delay {concerning} the promise

Here, **promise** refers to the fulfillment of the **promise** that Jesus will return. See how you translated it in 3:4. Alternate translation: "The Lord does not delay to fulfill his promise" (See: **Metonymy (p.171)**) (See: **Metonymy (p. 171)**)

as some consider delay

Here, **some** refers to the "mockers" introduced in 3:3 and anyone else who believed that the Lord is slow to fulfill his promises, because Jesus had not yet returned. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "as some, such as these mockers, consider slowness" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

but is patient toward you

Peter is leaving out a word that this clause would need in many languages in order to be complete. This word can be supplied from the beginning of the verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state explicitly who is the one being **patient** and begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: "But God is patient toward you" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

not wanting any to perish

This clause indicates the reason why God is delaying the return of Jesus. Alternate translation: "because he does not want any to perish" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

but all to move on to repentance

Peter is leaving out words that this clause would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the previous clause. Alternate translation: "but he wants all to move on to repentance" (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

but all to move on to repentance

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **repentance** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "but all to repent" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 100)**)

2 Peter 3:10

But

Here, **But** indicates a contrast between what the mockers believed about God and what God will really do. Although the Lord is being patient and wants people to repent, he will indeed return and bring judgment. (See: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.113)**) (See: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.113)**)

the day of the Lord will come as a thief

Peter speaks of the **day** when God will judge everyone as if it were a **thief** who will come unexpectedly and take people by surprise. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this simile in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "the day of the Lord will come unexpectedly" (See: **Simile (p.199)**) (See: **Simile (p.199)**)

a thief, in which

Here, **which** refers to "the day of the Lord". If it would be helpful for your readers, you could express this explicitly and begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: "a thief. In the day of the Lord" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

the elements will be destroyed

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in an active form and you can indicate who will do the action. Alternate translation: "God will destroy the elements" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

the elements will be destroyed

Here, **elements** could refer to: (1) the basic elements that make up the natural universe. Alternate translation: "the components of nature will be destroyed" (2) the heavenly bodies, such as the sun, moon, and stars. Alternate translation: "the heavenly bodies will be destroyed"

and the elements will be destroyed, being burned up

Here, **being burned up** refers to the means by which the elements will be destroyed. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "and the elements will be destroyed by means of burning" or "and the elements will be destroyed by means of fire"

the earth and the deeds in it will be found

God will see all the **earth** and all the **deeds** of everyone, and he will then judge everything. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active terms. Alternate translation: "God will find the earth and the deeds in it" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

the earth and the deeds in it will be found

Here, **deeds** refers to the actions of people on the earth. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "the earth and what people have done in it will be found" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

the earth and the deeds in it will be found

Here, **found** indicates that the removal of the heavens and elements will leave the earth and what has been done on it exposed for God to see and judge. Alternate translation: "the earth and the deeds in it will be exposed" or "the earth and the deeds in it will be revealed"

2 Peter 3:11

All of these things being thus destroyed

This clause indicates the reason for the expected result that follows in the rest of the verse. Peter tells his readers that God's future destruction of heaven and earth should result in them living holy and godly lives. Alternate translation: "Because of all of these things being thus destroyed" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

All of these things being thus destroyed

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and you can state who will do the action. Alternate translation: "Since God will thus destroy all of these things" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

of these things

Here, **these things** refers to the heavens, the elements, and the earth mentioned in the previous verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "these things that I have just described" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

of what sort is it necessary for you to be

Peter is using the question form for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this emphasis by translating his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. If it you translate these words as a statement, then you will need to change the question mark at the end of the next verse into a period. Alternate translation: "it is certainly necessary for you to be" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.195)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.195)**)

in holy behaviors and godliness

Peter is leaving out words that this clause would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the context. Alternate translation: "living with holy behaviors and godly acts" (See: **Ellipsis (p. 136)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.136)**)

2 Peter 3:12

waiting for and hastening

Here, **waiting for and hastening** are two things Peter wanted his readers to do while also living holy and godly lives, as stated in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "while expecting and hastening"

because of which

Here, **which** refers to "the day of God" from the previous clause. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "because of that day" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

being set on fire

This phrase indicates the means by which the heavens will be destroyed. Alternate translation: "by means of being set on fire"

the heavens, being set on fire, will be destroyed

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and say who will do the action. Alternate translation: "God will destroy the heavens with fire" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

the elements, & will be melted

Here, **elements** could refer to: (1) the basic elements that make up the natural universe. Alternate translation: "the components of nature will be destroyed" (2) the heavenly bodies, such as the sun, moon, and stars. Alternate translation: "the heavenly bodies will be destroyed" See how you translated this in 3:10.

being burned up by heat

This phrase indicates the means by which the heavens will be destroyed. Alternate translation: "by means of being burned up by heat"

2 Peter 3:13

new heavens and a new earth, according to his promise, we are waiting for

Peter put the direct object of the main verb at the front of this sentence for emphasis. If your language uses a similar construction for emphasis, it would be appropriate to have it here in your translation. But if this construction would be confusing in your language, you could express this emphasis in another way and change the structure of the sentence. Alternate translation: "according to his promise, we are waiting for new heavens and a new earth" (See: **Information Structure (p.163)**) (See: **Information Structure (p.163)**)

according to his promise

Here, the pronoun **his** could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: "according to God's promise" (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: "according to Jesus' promise" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

his promise

Here, **promise** could refer to: (1) God's promise to create a new heavens and earth, as promised in Isaiah 65:17 and Isaiah 66:22. Alternate translation: "his promise of new heavens and a new earth" (2) the promise of Jesus' second coming, as in 3:4. Alternate translation: "his promise of the return of Jesus"

in which righteousness dwells

Here, **righteousness** is spoken of figuratively as though it were a person who could dwell somewhere. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "in which righteousness exists" (See: **Personification (p.178)**) (See: **Personification (p.178)**)

in which righteousness dwells

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **righteousness** by translating the idea behind it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "in which everyone is righteous" or "in which everyone does what is right" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 3:14

Therefore

Peter uses **Therefore** to introduce a description of what his readers should do as a result of what he has just said. He is referring specifically to the discussion of the coming day of the Lord given in 3:10–13. Alternate translation: "Because of these reasons" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

beloved ones

Here, **beloved ones** refers to those whom Peter is writing to, which can be extended to all believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. See how you translated this in 3:1. Alternate translation: "beloved fellow believers" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

these things

Here, **these things** refers back to the events related to the coming day of the Lord, which Peter described in 3:10–13. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "these things that will happen on the day of the Lord" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

be diligent to be found spotless and blameless by him

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in an active form. Alternate translation: "be diligent so that God will find you spotless and blameless" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

spotless and blameless

The words **spotless** and **blameless** share similar meanings. Peter is using them together for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this connection by translating them with a single expression. Alternate translation: "completely pure" (See: **Doublet (p.134)**) (See: **Doublet (p.134)**)

by him

Here, the pronoun **him** could refer to: (1) Jesus. Alternate translation: "by Jesus" (2) God. Alternate translation: "by God" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

in peace

Here, **in peace** could refer to: (1) having peace with God. Alternate translation, as in the UST: "at peace with God" (2) feeling peace in one's heart. Alternate translation: "with peace in your heart"

2 Peter 3:15

consider the patience of our Lord {to be} salvation

Because the Lord is patient, the day of judgment has not yet happened. This gives people an opportunity to repent and be saved, as Peter explained in 3:9. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "consider the patience of our Lord as an opportunity to repent and be saved" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

consider the patience of our Lord {to be} salvation

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **patience** and **salvation** by translating the ideas behind them with equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: "that our Lord is patient to save people" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

to be} salvation

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **salvation** by translating the idea behind it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "to save people" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

our beloved brother Paul

Peter is using the term **brother** figuratively to refer to Paul as a fellow believer in Jesus. Alternate translation: "our beloved fellow Christian brother Paul" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

according to the wisdom having been given to him

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: "according to the wisdom that God gave to him" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

according to the wisdom having been given to him

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **wisdom** by translating the idea behind it with an adjective, such as "wise." Alternate translation: "according to the wise words having been given to him" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 3:16

in all the letters

Here, the context suggests that Paul is the author of **the letters**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "in all Paul's letters" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

speaking in them about these things

Here, **these things** could refer to: (1) the events related to the day of the Lord discussed in 3:10–13 and called "these things" in 3:14. Alternate translation: "these things that will happen on the day of the Lord" (2) the need to live godly lives and consider that God's patience is for saving people, as discussed in 3:14–15. Alternate translation: "these things I have just said about living blamelessly and about God's patience" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

which the ignorant and unstable distort

Here, **which** refers to the things in Paul's letters that are difficult to understand. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this phrase explicitly and start a new sentence. Alternate translation: "The ignorant and unstable ones distort these difficult things found in Paul's letters" (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**) (See: **Pronouns — When to Use Them (p.185)**)

which the ignorant and unstable distort

Here, **distort** is used figuratively to describe changing the meaning of a statement in order to give a false meaning like twisting something so that it changes shape. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "which the ignorant and unstable ones interpret falsely" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

as also the other scriptures

Here, **the other scriptures** refers to both the entire Old Testament and the New Testament texts that had been written by the time Peter wrote this letter. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "as also the other authoritative scriptures" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

to their own destruction

Here, **to** indicates that this clause provides the result of the "ignorant and unstable ones" falsely interpreting the scriptures. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "resulting in their own destruction" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

to their own destruction

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **destruction** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "so that they will be destroyed" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

2 Peter 3:17

Therefore

Connecting Statement:

Here, Peter uses **therefore** to introduce a description of what his readers should do as a result of what he has said, which could be: (1) the destruction of those who falsely interpret the scriptures mentioned in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "Because those who falsely interpret the Scriptures will be destroyed" (2) the previous content of the entire letter, especially the sure destruction of the false teachers. Alternate translation: "Because of all these things I have told you" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

beloved ones

Here, **beloved ones** refers to those whom Peter is writing to, which can be extended to all believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. See how you translated this in 3:1 and 3:14. Alternate translation: "beloved fellow believers" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.105)**)

knowing beforehand

Connecting Statement:

Here, Peter is giving the reason why his readers should heed his command in the next phrase. Alternate translation: "since you know beforehand" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

so that you might not lose your own steadfastness

Here, Peter speaks figuratively of **steadfastness** as if it were a possession that believers could **lose**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "so that you might not stop being steadfast" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

so that you might not lose your own steadfastness

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **steadfastness** with the adjective "steadfast." Alternate translation: "so that you might not lose your own steadfast faith" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

having been led astray by the error of the lawless ones

This clause indicates the reason why people might lose their own steadfastness. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "because of being led astray by the error of the lawless ones" (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**) (See: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.122)**)

having been led astray by the error of the lawless ones

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the error of the lawless ones having led you astray" (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.102)**)

having been led astray by the error of the lawless ones

Here, Peter uses **led astray** figuratively to describe people being deceived into living wickedly by false teachers as if they had been led away from the straight path. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this in a non-figurative manner. Alternate translation: "having been deceived into living wickedly by the error of the lawless ones" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

by the error of the lawless ones

This phrase indicates the means by which one might be led astray. Alternate translation: "by means of the error of the lawless ones"

2 Peter 3:18

grow in grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ

Here, **grow** is used figuratively to express experiencing or having something in increasing amounts. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor in a non-figurative manner. Alternate translation: "have more and more of the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ" (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.165)**)

in grace and knowledge

Here, **in** means "with reference to." Alternate translation: "with reference to the grace and knowledge"

grace

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **grace** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "kind acts" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 100)**)

knowledge

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **knowledge** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "what you know" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

of our Lord and Savior

Here, **our Lord** means "the person who is lord over us" or "the person who rules over us." The conjunction and indicates that our also applies to **Savior**, meaning "the person who saves us." If you include both of these phrases in your translation, then you will also need to put a comma at the end of the second phrase. Alternate translation: "of the person who rules over us and saves us," (See: **Possession (p.180)**) (See: **Possession (p.180)**)

To him {be} the glory

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **glory** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "May everyone glorify him" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.100)**)

to the day of the age

Here, **to the day of the age** is an idiom that means "forever." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "to eternity" or "forever" (See: **Idiom (p.161)**) (See: **Idiom (p.161)**)

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 80

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

> This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Parts of Speech* *(UTA PDF)*
> *Sentence Structure* *(UTA PDF)*

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

> ... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)
>
> > Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.
>
> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)
>
> > But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.
>
> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)
>
> > Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...
>
> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)
>
> > The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.
>
> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)
>
> > He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

"

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

> This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Sentence Structure (UTA PDF)*
>
> *Verbs (UTA PDF)*

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action. (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone." (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)
>
> > **The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)
>
> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea. It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)
>
> > He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about: "

Abstract Nouns (UTA PDF)
Word Order (UTA PDF)

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:11; 2 Peter 1:12; 2 Peter 1:17; 2 Peter 1:18; 2 Peter 1:21; 2 Peter 2:2; 2 Peter 2:4; 2 Peter 2:7; 2 Peter 2:9; 2 Peter 2:12; 2 Peter 2:14; 2 Peter 2:15; 2 Peter 2:17; 2 Peter 2:19; 2 Peter 2:20; 2 Peter 2:21; 2 Peter 3:2; 2 Peter 3:5; 2 Peter 3:6; 2 Peter 3:7; 2 Peter 3:10; 2 Peter 3:11; 2 Peter 3:12; 2 Peter 3:14; 2 Peter 3:15; 2 Peter 3:17

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

> This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

> I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
> (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> > Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> > At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread.** (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**."

> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**. or: At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit* *(UTA PDF)*

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:1; 2 Peter 1:2; 2 Peter 1:5; 2 Peter 1:8; 2 Peter 1:9; 2 Peter 1:11; 2 Peter 1:18; 2 Peter 1:19; 2 Peter 2 General Notes; 2 Peter 2:1; 2 Peter 2:2; 2 Peter 2:4; 2 Peter 2:7; 2 Peter 2:8; 2 Peter 2:14; 2 Peter 2:15; 2 Peter 2:16; 2 Peter 3:1; 2 Peter 3:2; 2 Peter 3:3; 2 Peter 3:4; 2 Peter 3:7; 2 Peter 3:9; 2 Peter 3:10; 2 Peter 3:14; 2 Peter 3:15; 2 Peter 3:16; 2 Peter 3:17

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

> This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Order of Events (UTA PDF)*
> *Writing Styles (UTA PDF)*

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

  ◦ Setting includes:
  ◦ where the story takes place
  ◦ when the story takes place
  ◦ who is present when the story begins
  ◦ what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
> Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of
> Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his
> disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain**, **rubbing them in their hands**. But
> some of the Pharisees said … (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said …."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> **And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of
> Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But
> Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother,
> and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He
> locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram**. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

> > "**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> > "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

Connecting Words and Phrases (UTA PDF)
Introduction of a New Event (UTA PDF)

Referenced in: 2 Peter 2:8

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

> This page answers the question: *What are blessings, and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Writing Styles (UTA PDF)*
> *Poetry (UTA PDF)*

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

> Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, "Yahweh be with you." And they said to him, "May Yahweh bless you." (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul's second letter to Timothy:

> Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT) The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

Add a verb if that is natural in your language.
Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.
Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

> The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb 'be.' However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the 'grace' from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide 'God' as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them."

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God's presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

> "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

"Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them."

"Our sister, by God's power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them."

"

Referenced in:

Connect — Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a contrast relationship?*

Contrast Relationship

Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words "but," "although," "even though," "though," "yet," or "however."

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph's brothers' evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God's good plan to save many people. The word "but" marks the contrast.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word "yet."

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

>> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

>> The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

> {David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)

>> [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

"

Referenced in:

Connect — Factual Conditions

Conditional Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate factual conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Factual Conditions

Description

A Factual Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true in the speaker's mind. In English, a sentence containing a Factual Condition can use the words "even though," "since," or "this being the case" to indicate that it is a factual condition and not a hypothetical condition.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not state something as a condition if it is certain or true. Translators from these languages may misunderstand the original languages and think that the condition is uncertain. This would lead to mistakes in their translations. Even if the translators understand that the condition is certain or true, the readers may misunderstand it. In this case, it would be best to translate it as a statement of fact rather than as a conditional statement.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> "**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!" (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> Elijah came near to all the people and said, "How long will you keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God**, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him." Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

This sentence has the same construction as a hypothetical condition. The condition is "if Yahweh is God." If that is true, then the Israelites should worship Yahweh. But the prophet Elijah does not question whether or not Yahweh is God. In fact, he is so certain that Yahweh is God that later in the passage he pours water all over his sacrifice. He is confident that God is real and that he will burn even an offering that is completely wet. Over and over again, the prophets taught that Yahweh is God, so the people should worship him. The people did not worship Yahweh, however, even though He is God. By putting the statement or instruction into the form of a Factual Condition, Elijah is trying to get the Israelites to understand more clearly what they should do.

> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

Yahweh has said that he is a father and a master to Israel, so even though this sounds like a hypothetical condition because it begins with "if," it is not hypothetical. This verse begins with the proverb that a son honors his father. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh. The other proverb in the verse says that a servant honors his master. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh, so it seems that he is not their master. But Yahweh is the master. Yahweh uses the form of a hypothetical condition to demonstrate that the Israelites are wrong. The second part of the condition that should occur naturally is not happening, even though the conditional statement is true.

Translation Strategies

If using the form of a hypothetical condition is confusing or would make the reader think that the speaker doubts what he is saying in the first part of the sentence, then use a statement instead. Words such as "since" or "you know that …" or "it is true that …" can be helpful to make the meaning clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> "**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!" (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

>> "**It is true that** Yahweh is God, so worship him!"

> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

>> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **Since** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **Since** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?"

"

Referenced in:

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a goal (purpose) relationship?*

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are "in order to," "in order that" or "so that." It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison**. (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman's false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

> Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian**. (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with "in order to."

> Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes**. Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God's ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

> Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

> Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with "and." Then the word "so" marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
(2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!" (Ruth 2:16 ULT)
>
> > "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!"

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)
>
> > The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us."

(2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17bULT)
>
> > "… keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**." or: "… keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**."

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

> > But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance**.

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:3; 2 Peter 1:4; 2 Peter 2:4; 2 Peter 2:9; 2 Peter 2:12; 2 Peter 3:2; 2 Peter 3:7

Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Hypothetical Condition

Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the "then" clause) will only take place if the first event (the "if" clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God's promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God's promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the "if clause") is stated after the "then" clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

> If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.
(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

> God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

>> If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

>> If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

>> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

"

Referenced in:

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, of chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the reason-result relationship?*

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus!
> (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. "Because" connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.
> (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by "so that." Notice that the term "so that" often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> "Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God." (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised,
> **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.
(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.
(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which
> he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.
> (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he
> be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:3; 2 Peter 1:8; 2 Peter 1:9; 2 Peter 1:10; 2 Peter 1:11; 2 Peter 1:12; 2 Peter 1:14; 2 Peter 1:16; 2 Peter 1:17; 2 Peter 1:21; 2 Peter 2:1; 2 Peter 2:4; 2 Peter 2:6; 2 Peter 2:7; 2 Peter 2:18; 2 Peter 2:21; 2 Peter 3:9; 2 Peter 3:11; 2 Peter 3:14; 2 Peter 3:16; 2 Peter 3:17

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

> This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to join parts of the text in different ways?*

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

> It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.
>
> **Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word "instead" introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word "then" introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

> **Therefore,** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word "therefore" links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. "Therefore" usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word "and" links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word "but" contrasts what one group of people will be called in God's kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

> We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God's servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words "so that" connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. "Instead" contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God's servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
(3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so."

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "instead" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like "therefore," a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word "but" is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word "but" would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So "and" might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

> **Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

"

Referenced in:

Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

> This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Parts of Speech (UTA PDF)*
> *Sentence Structure (UTA PDF)*

When the phrase that modifies a noun is a relative clause (a phrase that starts with a word such as "who" or"which"), some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that the added phrase is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
    - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase "who was thankful" could distinguish this sister of Mary's from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the phrase is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
    - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary's sister. It tells us about how Mary's sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples From the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

> The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words "holy" and "most holy" distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

> A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase "who bore him" distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

> ... for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word "righteous" simply reminds us that God's judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

> You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

The phrases "to your needy and to your poor" give further information about "your brother." They do not refer to a separate group of people.

> How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase "who is 90 years old" is a reminder of Sarah's age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age.

> I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase "whom I have created" is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

> I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying "worthless idols," David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose. (2) Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

> I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)
>
> > **Because idols are worthless**, I hate those who serve them.

> ... for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

> … for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

> Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?
>
> You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)
>
> You must surely open your hand to any of **your needy and poor brothers** in your land.

(2) Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

> You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.
>
> **Receiving my love**, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

> You must surely open your hand to your brother **who is needy and poor** in your land.

"

Next we recommend you learn about:

Double Negatives *(UTA PDF)*

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:1; 2 Peter 2:4; 2 Peter 2:5; 2 Peter 2:7; 2 Peter 2:11; 2 Peter 2:12

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

> This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Parts of Speech (UTA PDF)*
>
> *Sentence Structure (UTA PDF)*

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not," such as the bolded parts of these words: "**un**happy," "**im**possible," and "use**less**." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> We did this **not** because we have **no** authority … (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)
>
> And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)
>
> Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, "No vi a nadie," literally says "I did not see no one." It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one." The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone."
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent."
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" can mean "He is very intelligent." In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called litotes.

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.
or:
Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

> A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

> I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.
(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

>> "For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

>> "… so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

>> Without me, you can do **nothing**.
>> or:
>> Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

> …ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)
> …iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law
>
> > …**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law
> > or:
> > …**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

---
Next we recommend you learn about:

Verbs (UTA PDF)

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:8; 2 Peter 2:3

Doublet

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

> This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> ... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of "Master" means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

>> "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

>> "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> ... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

>> • English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

>> "... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

>> Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:8; 2 Peter 1:10; 2 Peter 2:11; 2 Peter 2:13; 2 Peter 2:17; 2 Peter 3:8; 2 Peter 3:14

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*
> *Sentence Structure (UTA PDF)*

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as
> wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" And so he
> said, "Lord, **that I might recover my sight**." (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> "Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ
> Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and
> peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous.
> (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

>> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand
>> in the assembly** of the righteous.

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" And so he
> said, "Lord, **that I might recover my sight**." (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

>> Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to
>> do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my
>> sight."

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

>> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young
>> ox.

English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:5; 2 Peter 1:6; 2 Peter 1:7; 2 Peter 1:21; 2 Peter 2:9; 2 Peter 2:11; 2 Peter 2:13; 2 Peter 3:5; 2 Peter 3:9; 2 Peter 3:11

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

> … they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead." It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
>
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**"
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**"
>
> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

> > But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man**?"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

> > "They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:14; 2 Peter 1:15; 2 Peter 3:4

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

> This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Sentence Types (UTA PDF)*

> Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

> When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

> **Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

> Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

> **How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

>> "You **are** such a worthless person!"

> Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

>> "Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word "wow" shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

> They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak." (Mark 7:37 ULT)

>> "They were extremely astonished, saying, '**Wow**! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"

> Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

>> "**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

> "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

>> "Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me**? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" "**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

> How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

>> "His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

>> Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Alas**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 2:10; 2 Peter 2:14
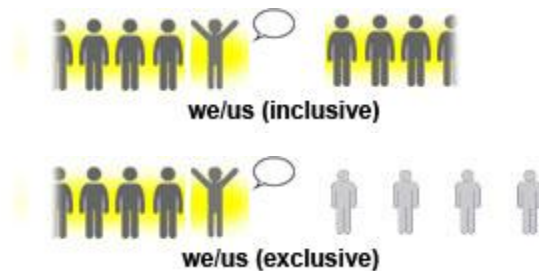
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive

<table>
<tr><td>This page answers the question: What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Pronouns (UTA PDF)</td></tr>
</table>

forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *When Masculine Words Include Women (UTA PDF)*

"

Referenced in:

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you." Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than "I" or "you."

Description

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit (UTA PDF)

Pronouns (UTA PDF)

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we." (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you." (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he," "she," "it," and "they." (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you."

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and used "his." He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "his." He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!" (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you." He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your."

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."
(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34)
>
> > But David said to Saul, "**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)
>
> > Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?"
>
> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)
>
> > So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *Forms of You (UTA PDF)*

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:1

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

> This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Forms of 'You' — Singular (UTA PDF)*
> *Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural (UTA PDF)*

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he or she is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" — Formal or Informal

Masculine and Feminine

Some languages have a **masculine** form and a **feminine** form of the word for "you." People use the **masculine** form when speaking to a man or boy and the **feminine** form when speaking to a woman or girl.

English does not make any of the above distinctions, so they are absent in the ULT. Please be aware of this and use the appropriate forms of "you" if your language does make any of these distinctions.

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:2; 2 Peter 1:5

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Parts of Speech (UTA PDF)*

> Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet? So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife**; **the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.
(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.
(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."
(4) Use the plural form, as in "people."
(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**." (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain."

(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain."

(4) Use the plural form, as in "people" (or in this sentence, "men").

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain"

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain."

Next we recommend you learn about:

When Masculine Words Include Women *(UTA PDF)*

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:9; 2 Peter 2:6; 2 Peter 2:21; 2 Peter 3:2

Hendiadys

Description

In a hendiadys, a speaker uses two words that mean different things and that are connected with "and." These two words work together to express a single idea. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*
> *Parts of Speech (UTA PDF)*

> ... his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by "and" can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. "The blessed hope" and "appearing of the glory" refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, "our great God" and "Savior Jesus Christ" refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

"A mouth" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes what comes from the mouth.

> If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the

other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

>> For I will give you **wise words** ...

> Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

>> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

>> for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

>> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

>> If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

>> if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

>> We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Doublet *(UTA PDF)*

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:3; 2 Peter 1:9; 2 Peter 1:16

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns* *(UTA PDF)*

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means "king of righteousness," and then also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

>> You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**

> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULT)

>> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you."

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

>> She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out'),** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

>> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?"
>> Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> … a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

>> … a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

>> [1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

>> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

>> a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

>> [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

>> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

>> It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

>> [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

"

Next we recommend you learn about:

Copy or Borrow Words (UTA PDF)

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **stone upon stone in you.** (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians.** (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,** but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed …
> (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.**
> (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)
>
> > The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

> When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do,** for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)
>
> > And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. or:

> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

> > The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 3:4

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase "come under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>
> > Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>
> > He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>
> > I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)
>
> > **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>
> > I am crying my **eyes out**

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:5; 2 Peter 2:5; 2 Peter 2:8; 2 Peter 2:14; 2 Peter 2:15; 2 Peter 2:21; 2 Peter 3:4; 2 Peter 3:18

Information Structure

Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

<div style="border:1px solid #000; padding:10px">
This page answers the question: *How do languages arrange the parts of a sentence?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Sentence Structure (UTA PDF)
</div>

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, "What did Peter paint yesterday?" The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, "his house." Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say "His house is what Peter painted (yesterday)."

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place." (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

> Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that "woe" is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

Translation Strategies

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.
(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

> And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

> Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, "Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place." (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food."

> Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > When all men speak well of you, which is just as people's ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

"

Next we recommend you learn about:
Word Order (UTA PDF)
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (UTA PDF)

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:20; 2 Peter 2:6; 2 Peter 3:13

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, "The girl I love is a red rose."

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

> This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech* (UTA PDF)
> *Simile* (UTA PDF)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love." This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**," "family **tree**," "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.
- "Let us **go ahead** with our debate." Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- "You **defend** your theory well." Argument is spoken of as war.
- "A **flow** of words." Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
> (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, "Go and tell that fox …" (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who
> believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work
> of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material.

The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**."
> The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread."
> (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

>> Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)

> > It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

> > And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand." "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

>> I will make you to become **people who gather men**. Now you gather fish.
>> I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:2; 2 Peter 1:4; 2 Peter 1:8; 2 Peter 1:9; 2 Peter 1:10; 2 Peter 1:12; 2 Peter 1:13; 2 Peter 1:14; 2 Peter 1:19; 2 Peter 1:21; 2 Peter 2:1; 2 Peter 2:2; 2 Peter 2:4; 2 Peter 2:10; 2 Peter 2:12; 2 Peter 2:13; 2 Peter 2:15; 2 Peter 2:17; 2 Peter 2:18; 2 Peter 2:19; 2 Peter 2:20; 2 Peter 2:21; 2 Peter 3:1; 2 Peter 3:3; 2 Peter 3:4; 2 Peter 3:15; 2 Peter 3:16; 2 Peter 3:17; 2 Peter 3:18

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

> ... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

>> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

>> "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David." or:
>> "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

>> "Who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:4; 2 Peter 1:17; 2 Peter 1:19; 2 Peter 2:3; 2 Peter 2:5; 2 Peter 2:10; 2 Peter 2:14; 2 Peter 2:20; 2 Peter 3:2; 2 Peter 3:4; 2 Peter 3:5; 2 Peter 3:7; 2 Peter 3:9

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man."

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He."

Here is a sentence that shows that "rich" can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich," and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

> This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Parts of Speech (UTA PDF)*

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
> > The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.
>
> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)
>
> > Blessed are **people who are meek**.

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 2:20

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

> This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does
> and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything…does" corresponds to "all the paths…takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

> Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
> exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
> and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

>> Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

>> Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

>> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

> Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

> You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

> All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

> Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

"

Next we recommend you learn about:

Personification *(UTA PDF)*

Referenced in: 2 Peter 2:3

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

> This page answers the question: *What is personification?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
>
> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word "as."
>
> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
>
> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about: "

Apostrophe (UTA PDF)

Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns (UTA PDF)

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:3; 2 Peter 2:2; 2 Peter 2:3; 2 Peter 3:13

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**," by using **an apostrophe and the letter "s"**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

> This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Parts of Speech (UTA PDF)*
> *Sentence Structure (UTA PDF)*

> • the house **of** my grandfather
> • my grandfather **'s** house
> • **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

> • Ownership — Someone owns something.
> > ◦ The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
>
> • Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
> > ◦ The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
> > ◦ A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
>
> • Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
> > ◦ The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
> > ◦ the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
>
> • Contents — Something has something in it.
> > ◦ a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
>
> • Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
> > ◦ my head — the head that is part of my body
> > ◦ the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession.** This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language. In languages that mark the difference, the expression of inalienable possession and alienable possession will be different.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

> • You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
> • Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

> The younger son … wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

> Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace.** (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

(1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
(2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
(3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)
>
> > "On their heads were **gold crowns**"

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)
>
> > Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink … will not lose his reward.

> Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath.** (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)
>
> > Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**. or: Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, "punishment of Yahweh" and "your God.")

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God.** (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)
>
> > Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

> You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)
>
> > You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

> You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)
>
> > You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

"

Referenced in:

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are "I," "you," "he," "it," "this," "that," "himself," "someone," and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

> This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Parts of Speech (UTA PDF)*

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
    - Exclusive and Inclusive "We"
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
    - Forms of You
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
    - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word "himself" refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

> • **Who** built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

> • I saw the house **that John built**. The clause "that John built" tells which house I saw.
> • I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause "who built the house" tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

> • Have you seen **this** here?
> • Who is **that** over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

> • He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
> • **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
> • **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, "they" and "you" just refer to people in general.

"

Referenced in:

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> This page answers the question: *How do I decide whether or not to use a pronoun?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Pronouns (UTA PDF)*
> *Sentence Structure (UTA PDF)*

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase "this man." Then he is referred to with the pronoun "him."

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)

> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> > At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **he** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

"

Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

> This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Metaphor (UTA PDF)*
>
> *Parallelism (UTA PDF)*
>
> *Writing Styles (UTA PDF)*

> Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

> Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples From the Bible

> A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
> and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

> Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
> so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

> The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
> but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

> A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
> and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

> > It is better to have a good name than to have great riches,
> > and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.
> >
> > Wise people choose a good name over great riches,
> > and favor over silver and gold.
> >
> > Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.
> >
> > Will riches really help you?
> > I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

> Like **snow in summer** or rain in harvest,
> so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

> > It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain
> > in the harvest season;
> > And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

> Do not boast about tomorrow,
> for you do not know what a day may bring. (Proverbs 27:1a ULT)

> > Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

> There is a generation that curses their father
> and does not bless their mother.
> There is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
> and yet they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

> > People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous,
> > and they do not turn away from their sin.

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 2:22

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, "The food is ready. Come and eat."
- "The food is ready. Come and eat," **she said**.
- "The food is ready," **she said.** "Come and eat."

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning "said."

> But his mother **answered** and **said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (" "). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning "said."
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

> **Then Zechariah said to the angel**, "How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

> Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, "Teacher, what should we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

> So **he said to them**, "Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

> Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

> "I will hide my face from them," **he said,** "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

> For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh's declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

> **He said**, "Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him." (Acts 25:5 ULT)
>
> > "Therefore, those who can should go there with us," **he said**. "If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him."
> >
> > "Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him," **he said**.
> >
> > "Therefore, those who can," **he said**, "should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him."

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

> But his mother **answered and said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)
>
> > But his mother **replied**, "No. Rather, he will be called John."
> >
> > But his mother **said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John."
> >
> > But his mother **answered** like this. "No. Rather, he will be called John," she **said**.

Next we recommend you learn about:
Direct and Indirect Quotations *(UTA PDF)*

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:17; 2 Peter 3:4

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself," "yourself," "himself," "herself," "itself," "ourselves," "yourselves," and "themselves." Other languages may have other ways to show this.

> This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Pronouns* *(UTA PDF)*
>
> *Sentence Structure* *(UTA PDF)*

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

> If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject. (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence. (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone." (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

> If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)
>
> > "If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true."

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)
>
> > "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**."

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

> **He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)
>
> > "**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases."

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)
>
> > "**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were."

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

> But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)
>
> > "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain."

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)
>
> > "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in it's own place**."

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 2:19

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

> This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*
> *Sentence Types (UTA PDF)*

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> But those who stood by said, "**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**"(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above **to remind** King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order **to rebuke** him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above **to remind** his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then **rebuked** his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

> But you, why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Paul used these rhetorical questions **to rebuke** the Romans for doing what they should not do.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above **to show deep emotion**. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above **to show how surprised and happy she was** that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to remind** the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on **to teach them** about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question **to teach** the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden … (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to introduce what he was going to talk about**. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to express surprise or other emotion? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question.
(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

>> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

>> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

>> **This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed …

> **Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

>> **You should not insult God's high priest!**

> **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

>> **I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

> **And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

>> **How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> **Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

>> You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

>> If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone**?

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

>> **What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> But you, **why do you judge your brother**? And you also, **why do you despise your brother**? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

>>> Do you think it is good to judge your brother? Do you think it is good to despise your brother?

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 3:4; 2 Peter 3:11

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as," or "than."

> This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Figures of Speech* *(UTA PDF)*

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience. (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote. (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.
>
> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)
>
> > For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!
>
> If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** … (Matthew 17:20)
>
> > If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

> > How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

"

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *Metaphor (UTA PDF)*
>
> *Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns (UTA PDF)*

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:19; 2 Peter 3:10

Statements — Other Uses

Description

Normally statements are used to give information. Sometimes they are used in the Bible for other functions.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for statements?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Sentence Types (UTA PDF)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use a statement for some of the functions that statements are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Statements are normally used to give **information**. All of the sentences in John 1:6-8 below are statements, and their function is to give information.

> There was a man who was sent from God, whose name was John. He came as a witness in order to testify about the light, that all might believe through him. John was not the light, but came that he might testify about the light. (John 1:6-8 ULT)

A statement can also be used as a **command** to tell someone what to do. In the examples below, the high priest used statements with the verb "will" to tell people what to do.

> He commanded them, saying, "This is what you **must** do. A third of you who come on the Sabbath **will** keep watch over the king's house, and a third **will** be at the Sur Gate, and a third at the gate behind the guardhouse." (2 Kings 11:5 ULT)

A statement can also be used to give **instructions**. The speaker below was not just telling Joseph about something Joseph would do in the future; he was telling Joseph what he needed to do.

> She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

A statement can also be used to make a **request**. The man with leprosy was not just saying what Jesus was able to do. He was also asking Jesus to heal him.

> Behold, a leper came to him and bowed before him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, **you are able to make me clean**." (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

A statement can also be used to **perform** something. By telling Adam that the ground was cursed because of him, God actually cursed it.

> … **cursed is the ground** because of you; (Genesis 3:17b ULT)

By telling a man that his sins were forgiven, **Jesus forgave** the man's sins.

> When Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralyzed man, "**Son, your sins are forgiven**." (Mark 2:5 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a sentence type** that would express that function.
(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **add a sentence type** that would express that function.

202 / 226

(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a verb form** that would express that function.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a sentence type that would express that function.

> She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

The phrase "you will call his name Jesus" is an instruction. It can be translated using the sentence type of a normal instruction.

> > She will give birth to a son. **Name him Jesus**, because he will save his people from their sins.

(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, add a sentence type that would express that function.

> Lord, if you are willing, **you are able to make me clean**. (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

The function of "you are able" is to make a request. In addition to the statement, a request can be added.

> > Lord, you are able to make me clean. If you are willing, **please do so**.
> > OR:
> > Lord, if you are willing, **please heal me**. I know that you are able to do so.

(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a verb form that would express that function.

> She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

> > She will give birth to a son, and **you must call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins.

> Son, your sins are forgiven. (Mark 2:5 ULT)

> > Son, I forgive your sins.
> > OR:
> > Son, God hereby forgives your sins.

"

Referenced in:

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, "Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?" (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>> "**I** magnify the Lord."

> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>> **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him …

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)
>> I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Metonymy (UTA PDF)

Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies (UTA PDF)

Next we recommend you learn about: "

Metonymy (UTA PDF)

Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies (UTA PDF)

Referenced in: 2 Peter 2:8; 2 Peter 2:14

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added

> This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Choosing a Source Text (UTA PDF)*
> *Original Manuscripts (UTA PDF)*

words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." 16 [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." 16 [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Chapter and Verse Numbers *(UTA PDF)*
Original Manuscripts *(UTA PDF)*
Terms to Know *(UTA PDF)*
The Original and Source Languages *(UTA PDF)*

"

Referenced in: Introduction to 2 Peter; 2 Peter 2:4

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Sentence Structure (UTA PDF)*

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, "We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> ... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
>> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
>> We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins ... will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
>> Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.
>
>> Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
>
>> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) —
> People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made
> of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
>
> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread**
> > and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)
>
> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)
>
> > to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

Copy or Borrow Words *(UTA PDF)*
How to Translate Names *(UTA PDF)*

Referenced in: 2 Peter 2:1; 2 Peter 2:22

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

> This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Create Faithful Translations (UTA PDF)*
> *Son of God and God the Father (UTA PDF)*

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

> After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, "**This is my beloved Son**. I am very pleased with him." (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

> Jesus ... said, "I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**." (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that "Father" and "Son" are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

> Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit**. (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

> I **love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

> **No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son**. (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms "Father" and "Son" also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

> Jesus said, "Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made**." (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

> But in these last days, {God the Father} has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory and **the very exact representation of his being**. He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

> Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father**. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?" (John 14:9 ULT)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1:17

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words "men," "brothers," and "sons" refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

> This page answers the question: *How do I translate "brother" or "he" when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Pronouns (UTA PDF)*
> *Generic Noun Phrases (UTA PDF)*

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says "brothers" when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is "his," but it is not limited to males.

> A wise son makes **his** father rejoice but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like "man," "brother," and "son" can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

> Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, "If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, 'If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.' (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like "man," "brother," and "he" can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

(1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)
>
> > "The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies." "Wise **people** die just like fools die."

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
>
> > "For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia."

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

> > "If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me."

"

Referenced in:

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 80

know, knew, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

Used in this sense the term "know" and "knowledge" mean generally to understand something. It can also mean to be aware of a fact. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing facts should be used when translating this sense of the word "know."

(See also: know-relationship, law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

"

Referenced in: 2 Peter 1 General Notes

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannahi Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Kailey Gregory
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College
Leonard Smith
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
David Trombold, M. Div.
James Vigen
Hendrik � Henry� de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982-2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)